Hujambo!

A Standards-Based Approach to Introductory Kiswahili

Units 5-7

by

Brenda Wawire

with John Muchira and Peter Ojiambo

Illustrations by Maurice Wegulo

KU
OPEN LANGUAGE RESOURCE CENTER
The University of Kansas

These materials were developed under grant P229A180008 from the U.S. Department of Education. However, those contents do not necessarily represent the policy of the U.S. Department of Education, and you should not assume endorsement by the Federal Government.

Hujambo! A Standards-Based Approach to Introductory Kiswahili, Book 2
Last Revised: July 17, 2024.



Except as otherwise noted, this work is licensed under a
Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial 4.0 International License.

You are free to copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format and to remix, remix transform and build upon the material under the following terms:

- **Attribution** — You must give appropriate credit, provide a link to the license, and indicate if changes were made. You may do so in any reasonable manner, but not in any way that suggests the licensor endorses you or your use.
- **NonCommercial** — You may not use the material for commercial purposes.
- **No additional restrictions** — You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

To view a full copy of this license, visit https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/legalcode.

ISBN 9781611950649

Cover pattern

“Luxury mandala vector” by visnezh is distributed under a Free License.
https://www.freepik.com/vectors/luxury-mandala. Last accessed 8/12/2022.

About the Curriculum

Hujambo! provides a complete curriculum for introductory Kiswahili that chronicles the adventures of two American students studying abroad in Tanzania for an academic year. It is designed for an introductory Kiswahili course at the college level with approximately 150 contact hours of instruction (5 hours a week for two 15-week semesters, or 5 hours a week for three 10-week quarters). It provides a foundational understanding of Kiswahili and the cultures of those who share it as a common language. Students will acquire the basics of Kiswahili grammar and build a core vocabulary of approximately 1,000 words, including the most common words for everyday interactions and the individual vocabulary they need to speak about their own academic and personal lives.

This grammatical and lexical content is embedded within the storyline of a cultural exploration of East Africa. Students follow the two American students from their arrival at the airport until they depart home, providing an opportunity to learn about their host families, academic pursuits, and free time with friends. Conversations with members of the local community, as well as emails and texts they send to one another, provide meaningful insight about their encounters with a new culture and how it (re)shapes their view of the larger world.

The curriculum is divided into 7 units, each centered around a specific theme (e.g., introductions, family, daily activities, etc.). Each unit is then subdivided in 4-5 sections that build up vocabulary, grammar, and cultural knowledge around that theme. Each unit is designed around specific communicative goals and begins with the desired learning outcomes and tasks that students will perform to demonstrate mastery of the new content. Units begin with dialogues or monologues that model the language, cultural content, and targeted grammatical constructions, before moving on to carefully scaffolded activities that encourage interaction with classmates. Each unit concludes with a summative task that is either a written or an oral presentation.

Activities are designed using backward design and carefully integrate the 5Cs of the World-Readiness Standards (Communication, Cultures, Connections, Comparisons, and Communities) into each chapter. Students are also required to communicate in all three modes of communication (interpretive, interpersonal and presentational) as a means to measure their progress in a continuous and cyclical process.

Each activity is marked regarding format – speaking, listening, writing, reading – using a specialized icon.

INTERPRETIVE TASKS	INTERPERSONAL TASKS	PRESENTATIONAL TASKS
Students understand, interpret, and analyze what is heard, read, or viewed on a variety of topics.	Students interact and negotiate meaning in spoken or written conversations to share information, reactions, feelings, and opinions.	Students present information, concepts, and ideas to inform, explain, persuade, and narrate on a variety of topics using appropriate media and adapting to various audiences of listeners, readers, or viewers.
		

Table of Contents

5. Vyakula, lishe na mapishi 1
5.1 Vyakula 3
5.2. Kwenda mkahawani 26
5.3 Kununua vyakula sokoni 43
5.4 Kuandaa vyakula 61
Sources 76
6. Afya na hali ya maisha 80
6.1 Afya na Magonjwa 82
6.2 Mavazi na maumbile 105
6.3 Leo Hali ya Hewa Iko Vipi? 127
6.4 Sherehe na Likizo 143
Sources 160
7. Safari na Starehe 162
7.1 Usafiri 164
7.2 Starehe na Burudani 181
7.3 Safari katika vivutio vya Utalii 202
Epilogue 222
Sources 227

5. Vyakula, lishe na mapishi

Food, Nutrition and Recipes

Essential Questions:

1. How do cultural practices around food in your culture differ from those of other cultures that you might know?
2. How are meals used in East Africa to show hospitality to guests and to build family bonds?
3. What kinds of questions and practices during mealtime are considered inappropriate in your culture?
4. What are common practices surrounding meals and dishes in families in your culture? How different are they from other cultures?

Stage One:

By the end of this unit, students should be able to:

- present information on how to prepare an East African dish or a dish from their own culture with related images (Presentational);
- exchange information about the food and drinks that they like and dislike (Interpersonal);
- ask and respond to questions about dietary restrictions (Interpersonal);
- order food at a restaurant and over the phone (Interpersonal);
- ask and respond to questions about food items from a restaurant menu (Interpersonal)
- interact with others in everyday situations such as ordering or bargaining for food and drinks at the market (Interpersonal);
- explore the cultural significance of food in East Africa as compared to your own culture
- explain the role of mealtime as a central aspect for building family relationships and connections (Presentational);
- explain the notion of "hospitality" among Kiswahili speakers and compare hospitality practices with other cultures of the world. Discuss the perspective that governs this notion and how lack of understanding of this notion can affect relationships among people (Presentational).

Stage Two:

What will be acceptable evidence of the student's knowledge and ability?

INTERPRETIVE TASKS	INTERPERSONAL TASKS	PRESENTATIONAL TASKS
Students will read a recipe of an East African dish and identify the meal being prepared from its ingredients and how they are prepared. Students will then tell other students the steps to prepare the dish. Students will watch videos on street food in Zanzibar and write a summary of the food that is available and its importance in understanding the culture.	Students will exchange information about their food and drink preferences and dietary restrictions they may have. Students will roleplay a visit to a local restaurant during which they will place an order and pay the bill. Students will also practice ordering food over the phone. Students will roleplay visiting a local market in Kenya or Tanzania during which they will interact with a seller. Students will ask the cost of the items, state the quantity or the number of items they would like to purchase, and negotiate the price of items with the seller.	Students will create a digital poster that includes a photo collage to give a presentation to compare and contrast East African dishes versus their own culture. The presentation will include information about common foods, ingredients, how the food is prepared, cultural significance of the dishes, and cultural practices around meals in the targeted cultures. Students will also highlight similarities and differences in dishes and practices in the two cultures. Students will simulate an orientation for a study abroad group and will share information about an assigned topic (market culture, preparation of dishes, eating norms, market and buying practices). Students will also lead a discussion session that makes intercultural comparisons between their own culture and East African culture.

Stage Three:

What activities will students participate in to prepare them to demonstrate what they know and can do?

5.1 Vyakula

Zoezi A

Shamila and her host mother, Farida, discuss what they like to eat for breakfast. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Shamila: Shikamoo mama?

Farida: Marahaba Shamila. Habari za asubuhi?

Shamila: Salama sana mama. Je, mlilala vizuri?

Farida: Bila shaka. Tulikuwa na usiku mwanana. Sasa ninaandaa kiamsha kinywa. Je, wewe ungependa kunywa kinywaji gani asubuhi?

Shamila: Asubuhi mimi ninapenda kunywa kahawa chungu. Mimi hunywa kahawa chungu bila maziwa. Na wewe je?

Farida: Mimi ninapenda kunywa chai kila asubuhi. Mimi hupenda chai ambayo ina maziwa na sukari. Je, wewe hupenda kula chakula gani asubuhi?

Shamila: Mimi hupenda kula mkate, mayai, soseji na matunda mbalimbali. Na nyinyi je?

Farida: Kwa kawaida sisi hula mkate, mandazi, viazi vitamu, uwanga, ndizi na njugu pamoja na chai kwa kiamsha kinywa.

Shamila: Mnakula vyakula vya kupendeza sana. Ninajua nitafurahia vyakula hivyo bila shaka.

Farida: Utavifurahia bila shaka.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila anapenda kunywa vinjwaji gani asubuhi?
2. Farida anapenda aina gani ya chai kwa kiamsha kinywa?
3. Shamila hula vyakula gani kwa kiamsha kinywa?
4. Familia ya Farida hula vyakula gani kwa chakula cha asubuhi?
5. Je, unapenda chakula cha asubuhi cha Shamila au cha Bi. Farida? Kwa nini?

Zoezi B

Joseph recieves a call from an East African colleague who inquires about how he is doing. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions below.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Je, Joseph anavipenda vyakula gani?
2. Je, Joseph anavipenda vinywaji gani?
3. Kwa nini Joseph hapendi maziwa?
4. Je, familia pokezi ya Joseph hunywa kahawa?
5. Joseph anasema kuwa maisha katika mji wa Dar es Salaam yako vipi?

Zoezi C

Shamila is planning to stay with Farida's sister Anita for two weeks while collecting data for a class project. Anita has written Farida an email to inquire about Shamila's food preferences. Read Farida's response and answer the questions that follow.



Hujambo Anita,

Ninatumai wewe pamoja na familia yako mko salama. Sisi hatujambo. Tunaendelea na shughuli za kila siku vizuri. Asante kwa kujitolea kukaa na Shamila kwa muda ambao atakuwa akifanya utafiti wake katika mji wa Namanga. Ulisema kuwa ungependa kujua vyakula ambavyo Shamila anapenda kula? Yeye hula vyakula ambavyo sisi hula nyumbani. Kwa kiamsha kinywa, yeye anapenda kula mkate wa siagi, mayai, soseji na mandazi. Hapendi kula vyakula vya kuchemshwa kama vile viazi vitamu au uwanga. Havipendi vyakula vya kuchemsha kwa sababu havina ladha. Yeye hunywa kahawa chungu bila maziwa na sukari kila asubuhi. Huwa hanywi chai kamwe. Kwa chakula cha mchana au jioni yeye hula vyakula vya kawaida kama vile mchuzi wa ng'ombe, kuku, samaki au nyama ya mbuzi pamoja na wali, chapati au ugali. Yeye hapendi kula ugali sana kwa sababu hauna ladha tamu. Yeye anapenda sana mboga na matunda kwa hivyo yeye hula aina yoyote ya mboga au matunda. Kwa kweli, usisumbuke hata kidogo kwa maandalizi ya ziada kwa sababu Shamila anapenda kula vyakula vyovyote vya Afrika Mshariki. Iwapo una maswali yoyote kuhusu vyakula tafadhali mwulize tu Shamila au mimi.

Wako dada,

Farida

Jibu maswali yafutayo.

1. Shamila anapenda kula nini kwa kiamsha kinywa?
2. Yeye huwa hanywi kinywaji gani?
3. Kwa nini yeye hapendi vyakula vya kuchemshwa kama vile viazi vitamu au uwanga?
4. Je, Shamila anapenda vyakula gani kwa chakula cha mchana au jioni?
5. Je, Shamila anapenda matunda na mboga?

Zoezi D

Use the vocabulary and questions provided below to ask a classmate about what they like to drink. Be prepared to report back to the class on what you find out.



chai



maziwa



maji



kahawa



pombe (bia)



mvinyo



soda



maji ya matunda

Jibu maswali yafutayo.

1. Je, wewe unapenda kunywa vinywaji gani?
2. Wewe hunywa vinywaji gani asubuhi, mchana na jioni?
3. Wewe hupendi kunywa vinywaji gani?

Zoezi E

If you had the opportunity to have any of the following foods for breakfast, what would you choose and why?



mandazi



mkate



sambusa



uji



viazi vitamu



nduma



njugu



mayai



soseji



pankeki



bekoni/
nyama ya nguruwe



viazi mbatata



nafaka



mgando



maharagwe



saladi ya matunda

Kwa mfano: Ningependa kujaribu maharagwe na viazi mbatata kwa sababu ni vyakula vya kuupa mwili nguvu na pia vina ladha nzuri.

Zoezi F

Find out about a classmates food preferences using the questions below. Be prepared to report back to the class about your classmate's likes and dislikes.

- Je, wewe unapenda vyakula gani kwa kiamsha kinywa?
- Wewe hula kiamsha kinywa saa ngapi?
- Wewe hupendi kula vyakula gani kwa kiamsha kinywa?

Zoezi G

Survey as many classmates as you can to find out what they like (and don't like) to eat for breakfast. Your teacher will set a limit on how much time you have for your survey. Report back to the class about which classmates have common food interests.

Zoezi H

Shamila and Joseph go with a group of classmates to a local restaurant for breakfast one Saturday morning. They take pictures of their food and post them to their social media accounts. Write a list of the food items each one had for breakfast based on the pictures provided.

Chakula cha Shamila



1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

Chakula cha Joseph



1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.

Sarufi: Object Prefixes

As you already know, Kiswahili incorporates the subject of a sentence into the verb through the use of a subject prefix.

Je, **u**natoka nchi gani?	*Which country do you come from?*
Mimi **ni**natoka Uingereza.	*I come from England.*

Kiswahili may also mark the object of the verb (i.e., the person or thing that receives the action of the verb) within the verbal structure. An object prefix must agree with the noun to which it refers and it must **always** be included when the object of the verb is an animate object, like a person, an animal or an insect.

The object prefix is inserted after the tense marker and immediately before the verb stem.

Nina**m**fundisha Juma.	*I am teaching Juma.*
Nina**m**fundisha.	*I am teaching **him/her**.*
Maria ali**m**nunulia mtoto wake viatu.	*Maria bought her child shoes.*
Maria ali**m**nunulia viatu.	*Maria bought **her** shoes.*

Notice in the examples above that the object prefix can also be used without the object noun, provided that the noun to which it refers has been previously mentioned or is clear from context.

Here is a complete list of prefixes to use when the object of the verb is a person.

	Object Prefix	**Mfano**	**Example**
1st sing.	-ni-	Ana**ni**fundisha.	He is teaching **me**.
2nd sing.	-ku-	Ana**ku**fundisha.	He is teaching **you**.
3rd sing.	-m-	Ana**m**fundisha.	He is teaching **her/him**.
1st pl.	-tu-	Ana**tu**fundisha.	He is teaching **us**.
2nd pl.	-wa-	Ana**wa**fundisha.	He is teaching **you all**.
3rd pl.	-wa-	Ana**wa**fundisha.	He is teaching **them**.

Note that the prefix *-wa* is used for both the 2nd and the 3rd person plural forms, but the meaning will always be clear from context.

In the case where there are two objects in the sentence and one is animate, the object prefix must agree with that animate object.

Nili**wa**fundisha **wa**nafunzi hao sarufi.	*I taught those **students** grammar.*
Baba ali**m**nunulia **binti** yake viatu.	*The father bought his **daughter** shoes.*

When the object of the verb is an inanimate object, we can have both the object prefix and the object noun or just the object prefix (if the noun it is replacing is already known).

Maria ali**vi**nunua **vi**atu.	*Maria bought **shoes**.*
Maria ali**vi**nunua.	*Maria bought **them**.*

Nili**ki**la **ch**akula ambacho mama yangu ali**ki**pika.
*I ate **the food that my mother prepared**.*

Nili**ki**la chakula.
*I ate **it**.*

In cases where the verb describes how something "is", the object of the verb might also be the subject. The food, *chakula*, in the example below is both the subject and the thing that is delicious.

Chakula **ch**angu ni **ki**tamu.	*My **food** is **delicious**.*
Viatu **vya** Juma ni **vi**chafu.	*Juma's **shoes** are **dirty**.*

If there are two objects from different noun classes, the object marker is not used.

Nilinunua **ki**tabu na **ka**ratasi.	*I bought a **book** and **paper**.*

Baba ya Juma alipoteza **vi**tabu, kompyuta, na simu jana jioni.
*Juma's dad lost his **books**, **computer**, and **phone** yesterday evening.*



Zoezi I

Add the object prefix to each sentence below.

Mfano:
Mwalimu anafundisha **kemia**. → Mwalimu ana**i**fundisha kemia

1. Anapika chakula cha jioni.
2. Alijenga nyumba kubwa.
3. Aliomba vyombo kutoka kwa jirani.
4. Babu alinunua zawadi nyingi.
5. Alinunua kalamu za rangi nyekundu.
6. Mama anasuka mtoto.
7. Alinunua vitu vingi alipoenda sokoni siku ya Jumamosi.
8. Juma alivua samaki wengi kutoka baharini.
9. Dereva aliendesha gari la Kampuni kwa miaka mingi.
10. Mkulima aliuza ngómbe wake wote msimu wa kiangazi uliopita.



Zoezi J

Change the nouns in the following sentences into the plural forms, making the required changes to the verbs and adjectives to make them agree.

Mfano:

Juma ali**m**pa **m**toto **cha**kula **ki**dogo.
Juma ali**wa**pa **wa**toto **vya**kula **vi**dogo.

1. Mwalimu huyo ananifundisha hesabu na kemia.
2. Kiti kilichovunjika ni cha mwalimu Bakari.
3. Nimemwona mgeni wa shangazi yangu.
4. Nilikipika chakula kwa haraka kwa sababu nilikuwa nimechoka sana.
5. Mama atanunua vyakula vingi kwa sababu atakuwa na wageni wengi.
6. Mtoto aliiharibu Kompyuta ya baba yake.
7. Simu aliyoiharibu ilikuwa ya bei ghali sana.
8. Kitabu alichokinunua kilikuwa kimeraruka.
9. Ninamfahamu mwanafunzi mgeni.



Zoezi K

Complete each of the following sentences with the appropriate object prefix.

1. Daktari aliye___tibu mgonjwa anatoka kijiji cha Bondeni.
2. Nime___ona watoto wake sokoni.
3. Matunda aliyo___nunua yameharibika.
4. Chakula alicho___andaa kiliungua wakati alipoenda nje.
5. Nyumba alizo___nunua ni za kifahari sana.
6. Tikitimaji alilo___nunua halina ladha tamu.
7. Simu na Kompyuta walizo___uza ni bandia.
8. Wanafunzi wali___maliza kazi za masomo ya nyumba?
9. Babu ali___fundisha wajukuu kucheza gita.
10. Wajukuu hu___tembelea babu yao kila mwezi wa Disemba.



Zoezi L

It is a Monday morning, and you have just run into some Kiswahili classmates that you had dinner with last Friday. Talk briefly about your experience at the restaurant. Use appropriate object prefixes in your conversation.

Sarufi: Reflexive prefix *-JI-*

The reflexive prefix *-JI-* is used to express the idea of "oneself" in English. It also occurs in the object position of the verb and has only one form.

Shamila ana**wa**pikia chakula cha jioni.	*Shamila is preparing dinner for **them**.*
Shamila ana**ji**pikia chakula cha jioni.	*Shamila is preparing dinner for **herself**.*
Mimi hu**ji**nunulia vyakula.	*I buy food for **myself**.*

You will also see reflexives used in other situations:

Joseph ana**ji**tegemea kwa kila kitu.
*Joseph relies on **himself** for everything.*

Wanafunzi wana**ji**somea vitabu wenyewe.
*The students are reading the books to **themselves**.*



Zoezi M

Translate the following sentences into Kiswahili using the reflexive *-ji-* prefix.

1. Joseph cooks for himself.
2. Her sister braids her hair herself.
3. He buys his food himself.
4. Fifth grade students read the story books themselves.
5. I drove myself to the ceremony last night.
6. The sick doctor treated himself at home.
7. Juma bought himself the phone when he traveled to Mombasa.
8. Amina is teaching herself Kiswahili and French.
9. She likes to depend on herself.
10. She usually cooks her own meals.

Now create 10 sentences of your own using the reflexive *-ji-* prefix.



Zoezi N

Using the *-ji-* reflexive, write one paragraph highlighting things that you do for yourself. Compare and contrast your notes with your classmates. Complete the graphic organizer below to show the common things and the differences.

Me	**Shared**	**Classmate:** _____



Zoezi O

A classmate has called with an offer to bring you breakfast from a local restaurant. Ask what options you have and then give them your food order.

Zoezi P

Joseph and Matata are walking to the cafeteria to grab lunch. On the way, they chat about different foods they would like to have for lunch. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Joseph: Vipi Matata? Habari za mchana?

Matata: Salama Joseph. Je, unaenda kupata chakula cha mchana?

Joseph: Ndiyo ninahisi njaa sana kwa hivyo ninaenda kula chakula cha mchana.

Matata: Je, wewe unapenda kula nini kwa chakula cha mchana hapa Tanzania?

Joseph: Ninapenda vyakula vingi vya hapa Tanzania. Kwa chakula cha mchana, ninapenda kula mchuzi wa nyama ya ng'ombe kwa chapati na mboga au sukuma wiki, ugali na mchuzi wa nyama ya n'gombe. Na wewe je?

Matata: Mimi huwa sili nyama. Kwa hivyo kwa kawaida mimi hupenda kula mchuzi wa maharagwe kwa chapati au wali. Mimi sipendi kula ugali na sukuma wiki kwa chakula cha mchana.

Joseph: Kwa nini hupendi sukuma wiki na ugali kwa chakula cha mchana?

Matata: Sipendi ladha ya ugali kabisa.

Joseph: Mimi ninapenda ladha ya vyakula mbalimbali vya hapa Afrika mashariki isipokuwa mboga zingine za majani. Sipendi ladha ya mbogakwa sababu ni chungu sana.

Matata: Ninafurahi kusikia kwamba unavipenda vyakula mbalimbali vya Afrika Mashariki.

Joseph: Asante sana.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Kwa nini Joseph anaenda kupata chakula cha mchana?
2. Joseph anapenda kula vyakula gani?
3. Je, Matata hula nyama?
4. Matata anapenda kula vyakula gani?
5. Kwa nini Matata hapendi kula sukuma wiki na ugali?
6. Joseph hapendi vyakula gani vya Afrika Mashariki?



Zoezi Q

Shamila would like to invite one of her international classmates over for lunch at her host family's house, and Farida would like to know their food preferences. Shamila calls and leaves a voice message for her friend. Listen to the message and answer the questions below.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Nadia atatembelea familia pokezi ya Shamila siku gani?
2. Shamila atamsaidia bibi Farida kufanya nini?
3. Nadia anahitaji kufanya nini akipokea ujumbe wa Shamila?



Zoezi R

You would like to invite your Kiswahili classmates over next weekend for lunch to celebrate your birthday. You would like to know their dietary restrictions so that you can serve a meal that everyone can eat. Here are a few phrases that might help in that conversation:

Huwa sinywi maziwa kwa sababu nina mzio.
I don't drink milk because I have allergies.

Sili njugu kwa sababu ya matatizo ya tumbo.
I don't eat peanuts because I have stomach problems.

Hasani hali nyama ya nguruwe kwa sababu ya desturi za dini ya kiisilamu.
Hassan does not eat pork because of Islamic religious restrictions.

Mimi ni mlamboga kwa hivyo huwa sili nyama.
I am a vegetarian, so I don't eat meat.



Zoezi S

You have invited two East African friends to your home for brunch. One of the guests is willing to eat almost anything that you serve, while the other is very selective about what they will eat. The host should describe the items that are being served, and the guests should respond about whether they would like to eat the food that is being offered.



Zoezi T

One of your Kiswahili classmates has just returned from studying abroad in Tanzania, and you would like to learn more about what they ate while they were there. Role play this scenario with a classmate and be prepared to report back to the class.

Zoezi U

The class will be having a group dinner. Work in groups with each group describing a different picture below and why it would be the best choice for the meal. You will need to present your description to the class so that the class can vote on a final choice.









Zoezi V

Discuss the following questions in small groups. Be prepared to share your responses with the rest of the class.

1. Katika nchi yako, kuna tofauti gani katika vyakula vinavyoliwa katika sehemu mbali mbali?
2. Vyakula katika utamaduni wako vinaandaliwa kwa njia gani?
3. Watu wengi katika jamii yako hula aina gani ya vyakula?

Zoezi W

Read the paragraph below about cuisines in various communities in Kenya, and then prepare a short presentation to compare and contrast cuisines in your community. Be prepared to share the presentation with the class and respond to questions.



Kuna aina nyingi ya vyakula vitamu katika tamaduni mbali mbali nchini Kenya kuambatana na makabila tofauti. Kila unapotembelea maeneo mbali mbali, utagundua turathi za jamii za Kenya zinavyotofautiana kulingana na lishe na namna vyakula vinavyoandaliwa. Vyakula vya Kenya vinaambatana na makabila mbalimbali ambayo yana desturi na tamaduni tofauti. Makala haya yanaangazia baadhi ya vyakula maarufu nchini Kenya.

Ugali:

Ugali ni chakula ambacho hupendwa na watu wengi sana nchini Kenya. Ugali unatengenezwa kwa kutumia unga wa mahindi, mihogo, wimbi na mtama. Mara nyingi ugali huliwa kwa sukuma wiki, au mchicha, pamoja na mchuzi wa nyama au nyama iliyochomwa au kukaangwa. Ili kula chakula hiki unahitaji kuitumia mikono kwa hivyo unahitaji kunawa mikono kabla ya kula.

Pilau:

Pilau ni chakula maarufu ambacho asili yake ni ya kutoka bara hindi. Nchini Kenya Pilau inaliwa zaidi katika sehemu za pwani. Ni chakula maarufu sana katika sherehe. Harusi haipo bila pilau kwa menyu. Pilau ni mchele uliopikwa pamoja na vipande vya nyama, kuku, mbaazi, karanga na zabibu, ambazo rangi yake ya hudhurungi hutokana na kuungiwa ndani vitunguu na viungo vingine. Pia kuna pilau ya mboga pekee ambayo ina viungo kama njegere, viazi mbatata, vitunguu na kadhalika.

Mutura:

Wengine huita “soseji ya kiafrika.” Ni soseji ya jamii za Kenya inayotengezwa kwa damu pamoja na viungo vingine kama vile nyama zilizosagwa na kuchanganywa na viungo vingine. Viungo hivi husokotwa ndani ya utumbo wa ng'ombe au mbuzi, damu iliyoganda na kuchanganywa na vitunguu, chumvi na pilipili. Kisha mchanganyiko huu huchomwa kwa kutumia jiko la makaa. Mutura ukishaiva hukatwa katwa katika vipande vidogo na huliwa na kachumbari na pilipili.

Matoke:

Matoke ni mojawapo wa vyakula vinavyoliwa sana nchini Kenya. Ndizi ambazo hazijaiva hupikwa kwa njia mbali mbali kama vile kuchemshwa, kuchomwa, kukaangwa na wakati mwingine hupondapondwa. Matoke huliwa na mchuzi wa nyama ya ng’ombe au kuku, au mchuzi wa maharagwe na mboga. Chakula hiki huliwa wakati wowote kama vile wakati wa kiamsha kinywa, chakula cha mchana au chakula cha jioni.

Chapati:

Chapati ni mkate unaopendwa sana na watu wengi nchini Kenya. Chakula hiki huandaliwa wakati wa sherehe nyingi. Ni rahisi mno kutayarisha chapati. Chapati hutengenezwa kwa kutumia unga wa ngano, chumvi, na mafuta. Wakenya hula chapati kwa mchuzi wa nyama au maharagwe.

Mukimo:

Mukimo ni chakula kinachoenziwa sana na baadhi ya jamii za Kenya haswa kutoka sehemu ya kati. Hutayarishwa kutoka kwa viazi, mboga, mahindi, na vitunguu. Viungo hivi huchemshwa kisha huchanganywa na kupondapondwa hadi viwe laini.

Pure:

Chakula hiki huwa mchanganyiko wa mahindi na maharagwe. Mahindi na maharagwe huchemshwa kabla ya kukaangwa pamoja kwa kitunguu, nyanya na viungo vinginevyo. Ni chakula maarufu cha kula baada ya kufanya kazi ngumu na pia ni chakula cha kila siku kwa wanafunzi shuleni.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Ugali hutengenezwa kwa kutumia aina gani ya unga?
2. Kwa nini mutura unaitwa “soseji ya kiafrika?”
3. Je, kuna aina ngapi za pilau? Taja aina hizo.
4. Matoke hupikwa kwa njia gani?
5. Kwa nini pure ni chakula maarufu?
6. Je, unahitaji viungo gani kuandaa chapati?

Zoezi X

Read the text about Tanznian cuisine and answer the questions that follow.

Vyakula vya Afrika Mashariki (Tanzania)

Watanzania wengi wanaoishi mijini na vijini wanapenda vyakula ambavyo vina nguvu kama vile mahindi, wali, mihogo, wimbi, mtama n*a ndizi*. Watu kutoka sehemu za kaskazini mashariki wanapenda ugali wa mahindi au wimbi au ndizi. Vyakula hivi vyenye nguvu huliwa pamoja na mchuzi wa samaki, nyama ya ng'ombe, nyama ya mbuzi, kuku au nyama zilizokaangwa pamoja na mboga za majani kama vile sukuma wiki, mchicha, malenge, na viazi vitamu. Vyakula vya asili ya kihindi kama vile chapati, sambusa, masala na wali wenye viungo. Katika sherehe nyingi mapochopocho kama vile pilau, viazi mbatata, na vyakula mbalimbali vyenye nyama. Pombe huandaliwa kwa sherehe zingine kama ishara ya utamaduni. Pombe hazitumiwi katika sherehe za kidini.

Kiamsha kinywa katika jamii nyingi kinalingana na mapato ya watu na pia utamaduni na asili za jamii husika. Katika jamii nyingi watu wanapenda mikate, mandazi pamoja na kahawa au chai yenye viungo, sukari na maziwa, nafaka nakadhalika. Vyakula vingine ambavyo vinauzwa mitaani ni kama vile ndizi za kukaan.gwa, viazi vitamu, mahindi ya kuchoma, njugu karanga, samaki wa kukaangwa, sambusa, mkate, tende, mishikaki, nyama ya mbuzi au nyama ya ng'ombe ya kuchomwa. Katika baa nyingi katika mitaa mingi, kuna pombe za kienyeji. Kwa kawaida, watu hula nyama choma yenye viungo mbali mbali kama vile pilipili, chumvi na jusi ya limau.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Vyakula gani huandaliwa katika sherehe nyingi nchini Tanzania?
2. Kwa kiamshwa kinywa watu wengi nchini Tanzania hutumia vyakula gani?
3. Je, kuna vyakula gani vya mitaani nchini Tanzania?
4. Je, pombe huandaliwa katika kila sherehe nchini Tanzania?

Cultural Explorations

Mealtimes in East Africa are regarded as occasions for families and friends to enjoy each other's company and build social ties. Dining spaces across East Africa are nearly as varied as the peoples that inhabit the region. From western dining tables and chairs to short stools next to tables the height of a coffee table to eating on cushions on the floor, the table or floor merely provide a setting for food and fellowship, which follow quite distinct social rules in Swahili culture.

If seating is limited, senior male members of the household are given priority, with others (particularly children) eating at a different time or eating wherever they can find space. In larger families, several tables may be used, with groups divided by generation or perhaps along gender lines. A guest will be seated next to the host of the same gender and will be served first. The guest is expected to begin eating as soon as they are served. Your host is likely to fill your plate as it becomes empty. Your cup will likely be refilled as soon as it is more than half empty, but you should always wait to be served rather than pouring your own drink.

It is common for people to eat without using silverware, particularly in cases in which *ugali* is served. One simply takes a portion of ugali and makes a round shape with a slight indentation that can be used like an edible spoon with dishes like vegetables or stew. Thorough handwashing is expected both before and after the meal, and in some households, the hostess may go from guest to guest with a bowl of water and soap. Even after washing your hands, only touch the food with your right hand as the left is considered unclean (even if carefully washed).

Hospitality toward guests is an ingrained cultural practice with clear expectations on both sides. The host is expected to provide refreshments upon someone's arrival or shortly thereafter. These offerings are presented without first asking, as not making the offer quickly enough (and forcing the guest to ask for something) may suggest that the host is either rude or stingy. In some cases a guest might decline the host's offer, initiating a ritual negotiation between the guest and the host. The host must try to persuade the guest to accept the offering while the guest must refuse the generous offer, knowing that the offering will eventually need to be accepted. The guest must eat or drink at least a little of what is served.

Hosts go to great lengths to make sure that the quality of food offered honors their guests, often at great economic sacrifice to themselves. To honor special guests, a host might even slaughter their own livestock – a chicken or goat would be common options – to prepare a special meal. Although taking visitors to a restaurant or ordering food to eat at home is becoming more common, older generations may feel disrespected if a home-cooked meal is not offered.

Guests are expected to offer presents to their host and to the host's household. Common gifts include a special food or drink, special fabrics, grains and cereals, and household items. Special guests may also be given gifts in return when they depart; common examples of these gifts are maize, beans, fruits, or even animals from the host's own livestock. These gifts of agricultural goods are rooted in the farming economy in rural areas where the exchange of goods was also a means to share specialized crops and ensure the success of both families. Guests coming from abroad would be expected to bring something representative of their own culture or region.

Many East Africans, including those in urban areas, believe that guests bring blessings to the home and that the degree of blessing is tied to the degree of hospitality that is offered.

Cultural Reflections

Review the questions below with a classmate.

1. When are meals eaten in your culture? Is there a meal that is thought to be the most important? Is there a meal that you often skip? If yes, which one and why?
2. Are there particular dishes in your culture that are generally eaten with your hands? Is there any variation in how people view this practice? For example, do you believe that pizza should be eaten with a knife and fork?
3. What are the expectations of a host in your culture? Are there distinctions between preparing a home cooked meal and offering pre-packaged or store-bought meals?
4. Are guests in your culture expected to bring gifts when invited to someone's home? If so, what are typical things to bring? What kinds of gifts would you bring to an East African home?
5. Does your culture have specific expectations or rules about where people sit at the dinner table? Or perhaps, at which table they are allowed to sit?



Zoezi Y

For their Kiswahili class, Shamila and Joseph are preparing presentations about their favorite East African meal. Research East African cuisine and find a specific meal that you would like to try or have already tried. Prepare a presentation with pictures that explain the ingredients in the meal, when it is eaten, and where it is most commonly eaten in East Africa.



Zoezi Z

Share your presentation from the previous activity with the class. Be prepared to answer any follow-up questions that your classmates or instructor may have.

Key Vocabulary

Adjectives

bandia artificial; fake
baridi (si baridi) cold (not cold)
chote; vyote all; all (pl.)
-chungu bitter; strong
-enye viungo spicy; with spices
-ghali expensive
-gumu tough; difficult; hard
laini soft; tender; smooth
maarufu popular; famous
mno too much; extreme
moto (si moto; joto) hot (not hot)
muhimu important
pekee only; just
rahisi simple; easy
vuguvugu lukewarm
zaidi more

Adverbs

bila shaka certainly; without doubt
hasa exactly; especially
muhimu especially; particularly
tafadhali please
vinginevyo otherwise

Conjunctions

lakini but
ingawa even though
iwapo if
wakati while

Demonstrative

-pale, kule over there (far from the speaker)

Nouns

baa bar
barafu ice
bei price
bekoni; nyama ya nguruwe bacon
bia beer
borohoa; kihembe thick broth of cooked beans
chai tea
chai ya maziwa milk tea
chapati Indian flat bread
chumvi salt
chupa bottle
dengu mung beans; lentils
desturi custom; tradition
dini religion
divai; mvinyo wine
glasi (ya jusi) a glass (of juice)

harusi wedding
ishara symbol; sign
jamii group; community
jibini cheese
jirani neighbor
jusi juice
kabila tribe
kachumbari a fresh relish made from diced tomatoes, onions, cilantro, and lime juice
kahawa coffee
kande; pure mixture of maize and beans
karanga peanut; groundnut
kiamsha kinywa breakfast
kibanzi; vibanzi french fry; french fries
kikombe cup
kikombe (cha chai; cha kahawa) cup (of tea; of coffee)
kimanda toast
kipande piece; fragment
kitunguu onion
krimu cream
kuku chicken (animal)
ladha taste; flavor
lishe nutrition
mandazi bun; buns
mafuta fat; oil
maharagwe beans
mahindi corn
maji water
maji ya matunda fruit juice
maji ya nazi coconut water
malenge pumpkin
mapato income
matoke; ndizi banana
matumbo intestines; tripe
maziwa milk
mbatata Irish potatoes
mboga vegetables
mboga za majani leafy vegetables; greens
mchanganyiko mixture
mchele uncooked rice
mchicha spinach
mchuzi stew
mchuzi wa samaki fish stew
mchuuzi seller; vendor
menyu menu
mishikaki skewers; kebabs
mkate bread
mkebe tin
msimu season; period
muhogo cassava
mwili body (human body)
nafaka grain; cereal
namna sort; kind
nguruwe pig; swine
nguvu strength; power
njaa hunger
kiu thirst
nishati energy; strength

nyama meat
nyama ya… meat of…
- **… kondoo** sheep (mutton)
- **… kuchoma** burning (roasted or grilled meat)
- **… kuku** chicken
- **… mbuzi** goat
- **… ng'ombe** cow (beef)
- **… nguruwe** pig (pork)
- **… wanyama wa baharini** seafood

nyanya tomato
pakiti packet
pankeki pancakes
pasta pasta
pilau a rice dish cooked in broth, typically with meat and vegetables
pilipili pepper
pizza pizza
pombe alcohol
pombe kali hard alcohol (liquor)
sandwichi sandwich
saladi ya (**matunda**) (fruit) salad
samaki fish
sambusa samosa
siagi butter
sima; ugali stiff cornmeal porridge
soda soda
soseji sausage
sukari sugar
sukuma wiki collard greens
supu soup
tende date (fruit)
tikiti maji watermelon
tunda fruit
uji porridge
viazi vitamu sweet potatoes
vinywaji drinks
vitunguu onions
viungo ingredients
vyakula foods
vyakula vya mikono finger foods
wali cooked rice
yai egg
zabibu grape; raisin
zawadi present; gift

Quantitative Pronoun

baadhi (ya) some (of); a few (of)
vichache few (referring to food)
vingi many (referring to food)

Possessive Pronoun

-enye (wali wenye viungo) possessing; with (rice with spices)

Prepositions

bila without
hadi until
isipokuwa except; unless
kwa by
pamoja na together with
tangu since; from
wakati time

Verbs

-andaa to prepare
-chemsha to boil
-choka to be tired; to be exhausted
-choma to burn
-furahia to enjoy
-haribu to spoil; to destroy
-hisi/sikia njaa to feel hungry (to be hungry)
-hitaji to need (often followed by an infinitive)
-iva to become ripe; to ripen; to be cooked
-jaribu to try
-jua to know
-kaangwa to be fried
-lika to be edible; to be able to be eaten
-nawa (**mikono**) to wash (your hands)
-nywa to drink
-ondoa to remove; to take away
-pendelea to prefer
-penda to like
-taja to name; to list
-tayarisha to prepare
-tengeneza to make
-kuwa na ladha tamu to have a sweet taste (to taste sweet)
-kuwa na mzio to have allergies

Key Phrases

Haipo… It is not there…
Ili… In order to…
Kama ungepata nafasi ya… If you had the chance to…
Kwa haraka in a hurry
Kwa mikono yako with your hands
Matatizo ya tumbo stomach problems
Mimi huwa sili… I don't always eat…
Mimi ni mlamboga. I'm a vegetarian.
…na kadhalika. …and so on.
Ningependa kujaribu… I would like to try…
Sili…kwa sababu ya… I don't eat…because of…
Tafadhali nifahamishe kuhusu… Please let me know about/inform me about…
Unavipenda vyakula gani haswa? What are your favorite foods?
Usisumbuke hata (kidogo). Don't even bother (at all).
Utavifurahia bila shaka. You will definitely enjoy them.

5.2. Kwenda mkahawani

Zoezi A

Shamila and Bibi Farida are in the city center and stop at a local restaurant to have something to drink before they go home. Read their conversation with the waiter and answer the questions that follow.



Mhudumu: Hamjambo?

Shamila na Farida: Hatujambo kaka.

Mhudumu: Habari za jioni?

Shamila na Farida: Salama sana. Na wewe je?

Mhudumu: Salama pia. Karibuni sana katika Mkahawa wa Iroko. Mimi nitakuwa mhudumu wenu leo.

Farida: Asante sana.

Shamila: Mkahawa una mandhari mazuri sana. Nina kiu sana.

Mhudumu: Je, mngependa kunywa vinywaji gani leo? Tuna maji ya matunda, chai, kahawa, soda na vinywaji vingine vingi. Hii hapa menyu ya vinywaji vyetu.

Shamila: Mimi ningependa maji ya maembe. Je, mna kinywaji spesheli leo?

Mhudumu: Ndiyo kuna jusi ya nanasi na tikiti maji. Ungependa kuijaribu jusi hiyo?

Shamila: Ndiyo nitaijaribu jusi hiyo. Ningependa jusi baridi sana. Kwa hivyo tia barafu kidogo. Bibi Farida ungependa kunywa kinywaji gani?

Farida: Ningependa kunywa chai tu.

Mhudumu: Je, bibi ungependa chai ya maziwa au chai bila maziwa?

Farida: Ningependa chai ya maziwa ambayo ina tangawizi.

Mhudumu: Sawa sawa. Je, mngependa vitafunio vyovyote? Tuna sambusa, mahamri, na keki.

Farida: Hapana tungependa kunywa vinywaji pekee.

Mhudumu: Sawa sawa subirini kidogo nitalewaletea vinywaji vyenu hivi punde.

Farida na Shamila: Asante.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila na Farida walienda katika mkahawa gani?
2. Shamila angependa kunywa kinywaji gani?
3. Bibi Farida angependa kunywa kinywaji gani?
4. Je, kuna kinywaji spesheli gani mkahawani leo?
5. Je, bibi Farida angependa aina gani ya chai?
6. Je, Shamila na Farida wangependa kula vitafunio vyovyote?

Zoezi B

The waiter comes back to Shamila and Farida's table to check on them and to bring them the bill. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Mhudumu: Je, vinywaji vyenu vikoje?

Shamila: Jusi yangu ni tamu sana. Nimependa sana ladha ya nanasi na tikitiki maji.

Mhudumu: Ninafurahi kusikia kuwa umependa kinywaji hicho. Tulitumia matunda mazuri kukiandaa kinywaji. Mama umependa chai yako?

Farida: Ndiyo chai yangu imekuwa nzuri sana pia. Tangawizi na majani yamekolea vizuri sana.

Mhudumu: Ninafurahi kusikia kuwa umeipenda chai yako pia. Gharama ya vinywaji ni shilingi elfu mbili.

Farida: Pesa ndizo hizi.

Mhudumu: Asante sana. Karibuni sana tena wakati mwingine.

Farida na Shamila: Asante sana na kwaheri.

Mhudumu: Kwaherini.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Je, kwa nini Shamila alipenda kinywaji chake?
2. Je, kwa nini bibi Farida alikipenda kinywaji chake?
3. Bei ya vinywaji ilikuwa shilingi ngapi?



Zoezi C

Shamila, Joseph, and a few of their classmates would like to go to a local restaurant downtown one Friday evening to unwind. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions below.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Je, Shamila, Joseph na wenzao wamemaliza vipindi vyao vya masomo?
2. Je, Shamila angependa kujiunga na Joseph na wenzake kwenye mkahawa wa Kijitonyama?
3. Kuna vinywaji gani katika mkahawa wa Kijitonyama?
4. Joseph na Shamila wanatarajia kupata burudani gani kwenye mkahawa wa Kijitonyama?
5. Shamila anatarajia kufika mkahawani wa Kijitonyama saa ngapi?



Zoezi D

One evening, you want to go out with your friends to unwind and grab a few drinks. You call two or three friends to see if they are available and would like to join you, but they are having trouble agreeing on where to go. Role play these phone conversations to decide when and where you plan to go out and why you like or dislike certain venues.



Zoezi E

You are out in downtown Dar es Salaam with your friends on a weekend night. With a classmate, role play a conversation at a club, where one of you is the patron and the other is the bartender. Make sure to discuss the different types of beverages (alcoholic and non-alcoholic) that are available and how much they cost. Include any drink specials that the club offers.



Zoezi F

One afternoon, Joseph meets his classmate after class. They decide to go to the cafeteria and have lunch together. Listen to the conversation and answer the questions below.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Je, kwa nini Matata anasema amechoka sana?
2. Joseph na Matata wameamua kwenda kula chakula cha mchana katika mkahawa gani?
3. Kwa nini wameuchagua mkahawa huo?
4. Kuna aina gani za burudani katika mkahawa huo?



Zoezi G

Joseph and Matata arrive at *Karafuu* restaurant. Read their conversation with the waiter and answer the questions that follow.

Mhudumu: Hamjambo?

Joseph na Matata: Hatujambo.

Mhudumu: Habari za mchana? Karibuni sana katika mkahawa wa *Karafuu*. Leo tuna burudani safi kabisa na pia vyakula maalum.

Joseph: Asante sana. Tunatazamia kula vyakula vizuri na kupata burudani safi.

Mhudumu: Menyu za vinywaji na vyakula ndizo hizi hapa. Kinywaji spesheli cha leo ni madafu yaliyochanganywa na maji ya nazi. Kinywaji hiki kina virutubisho muhimu vya afya. Je, mngependa kukijaribu kinywaji hiki?

Joseph: Bila shaka mimi ningependa kukijaribu kinywaji hicho. Ningependa kinywaji baridi sana. Matata, ungependa kukijaribu kinywaji hiki pia?

Matata: Samahani mimi huwasitumii nazi wala maji ya nazi kwa sababu nina mzio nayo. Nitakunywa madafu pekee bila maji ya nazi.

Mhudumu: Sawa. Nitawaletea vinywaji hivi punde.

Joseph na Matata: Sawa.

(They each look at the menu and discuss what to order.)

Mhudumu: Karibuni mnywe vinywaji vyenu. Je, mko tayari kuviagiza vyakula vyenu?

Joseph: Mimi ningependa kikaango cha bahari. Je, chakula hiki kina wanyama gani wa baharini?

Mhudumu: Chakula hiki ni mchanganyiko maalum wenye pweza, ngisi, kamba, na samaki.

Joseph: Safi kabisa. Ninapenda sana nyama hizo zote. Je, chakula hiki kinaliwa na nini?

Mhudumu: Kinaliwa na wali mweupe, viazi vya kupondwa, viazi vya kukaangwa au mboga mboga. Je, ungependa kula chakula hiki na nini?

Joseph: Ningependa kula kikaango cha bahari na viazi vitamu vya kukaangwa. Pia ningependa saladi ya mboga mboga za kijani.

Mhudumu: Sawa. *(Turns to Matata.)* Je, kaka ungependa kuagiza nini?

Matata: Mimi ningependa kula steki ya nyama ya ng'ombe. Je, steki hii imepikwaje?

Mhudumu: Chaguo nzuri bila shaka. Steki hii ni laini ajabu. Imekaangwa kwa mafuta na kupambwa na vitunguu vilivyopikwa kwa mvinyo wa rangi nyekundu, siagi na mchanganyiko maalum wa viungo vya shambani.

Matata: Je, steki hii huliwa kwa nini?

Mhudumu: Steki hii huliwa na viazi vilivyopondwa, au wali mweupe au vibanzi pamoja na saladi. Je, ungependa kula steki na nini?

Matata: Ningependa vibanzi na saladi ya mboga mboga za kijani na wali wa nazi kidogo pia.

Mhudumu: Sawa sawa. Subirini kidogo chakula kitakuwa tayari baada ya dakika kumi na tano. Bendi ya *Sauti Sol* inacheza muziki sehemu ya nyuma. Mnaweza kuitazama bendi hii mkisubiri chakula na kubarizi pale nje.

Matata na Joseph: Safi kabisa tutapumzika pale nje tukisubiri chakula chetu. Unaweza kutuletea chakula pale nje?

Mhudumu: Ndiyo hamna shida. Nitafanya hivyo. Karibuni na mstarehe.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Joseph na Matata walienda kula katika mkahawa gani?
2. Je, chakula alichoagiza Joseph kina mchanganyiko gani wa wanyama wa baharini?
3. Matata aliagiza vyakula gani?
4. Kwa nini Matata hakuagiza kinywaji maalum cha siku hiyo?
5. Leo, kuna burudani gani katika mkahawa *wa Karafuu*?
6. Matata na Joseph watasubiri chakula chao kwa muda gani?

Zoezi H

After serving Joseph and Matata their food, the waiter comes back to check on them. Read the conversation below and answer the questions that follow.

Mhudumu: Vipi kina kaka? Vyakula vyenu vikoje?

Matata na Joseph: Vyakula ni vitamu sana.

Joseph: Ninaipenda sana ladha na harufu ya vyakula vyangu.

Mhudumu: Na wewe je kaka?

Matata: Mimi pia ninaipenda ladha ya nyama. Pia saladi ni tamu sana. Ningependa kuongeza pilipili kidogo. Tafadhali nisaidie na pilipili.

Mhudumu: Sawa. Pilipili manga ndiyo hii hapa.

Joseph: Tafadhali tusaidie na maji ya kunywa baridi.

Mhudumu: Sawa sawa. Mngependa maji ya glasi au ya chupa?

Matata: Ningependa maji ya glasi yaliyo na barafu.

Joseph: Mimi ningependa maji ya chupa tafadhali.

Mhudumu: Sawa. Nitajumlisha bei ya maji pamoja na bei ya vyakula.

Matata na Joseph: Sawa sawa.

Mhudumu: Maji yenu ndiyo haya. Na hii ni risiti ya malipo yenu. Mkiwa tayari mnaweza kulipa kwa kadi au pesa taslimu.

Joseph: Nitalipa kwa kedi. Hii hapa. Asante sana kwa huduma yako.

Mhudumu: Karibuni tena katika mkahawa wetu wa *Karafuu*.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Vyakula ambavyo Matata na Joseph waliagiza vilikuwaje?
2. Joseph na Matata wangependa kuongezewa kitu chochote kwenye chakula walichokiagiza?
3. Je, wao watalipa malipo yao kwa njia gani?
4. Unafikiri, Joseph na Matata wamepata huduma nzuri katika mkahawa wa *Karafuu*? Kwa nini?

Zoezi I

You are out at a restaurant with friends during a trip to East Africa. In groups of three, create a conversation where two members of the group are ordering lunch and the third person is a person taking the order.



Zoezi J

You and a friend are at a restaurant in downtown Dar es Salaam for lunch. You have finished your meal, and the waiter comes back to your table to ask whether you would like anything else. Ask the waiter for more drinks and the bill.



Zoezi K

You haven't seen one of your friends from your Kiswahili class in a while, and you would like to catch up over dinner at their favorite restaurant. Work with a classmate to create a dialogue to arrange the dinner. Make sure to include details of time, place, and which meal(s) you would like to order. Be ready to act out your dialogue.



Zoezi L

On your way to the library one afternoon, one of your Kiswahili classmates asks if you would like to join them for lunch at a restaurant downtown. Decline the invitation as you have to meet one of your professors to review for an upcoming quiz.



Zoezi M

One evening, Joseph and a group of his classmates decide to order dinner. Listen to Joseph's phone conversation with the restaurant and answer the questions below.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Joseph ameagiza vyakula gani?
2. Joseph ameagiza vinywaji gani?
3. Vyakula vitakuwa tayari baada ya muda gani?
4. Joseph angependa kununua kiasi gani cha nyama?
5. Joseph atalipia vyakula vyake kupitia kwa njia gani?
6. Kwa nini Joseph hatalipa malipo ya kuvipeleka vyakula nyumbani kwake?



Zoezi N

There is a restaurant in your neighborhood that serves authentic East African food. One weekend, a few of your classmates stop by, and you decide to order dinner. Ask them what they would like to have, and then call the restaurant to place your delivery order. Your teacher will play the role of the person working at the restaurant. Be ready to give your address and answer any other questions the restaurant might have.

Sarufi: *–me–* timilifu (Present Perfect Tense)

In Kiswahili, the verbal tense marker -*me*- is used to convey that an action has just been completed. This -*me*- timilifu is similar to the English present perfect structure of *have/has + past participle* and can be conveyed with the word "just."

Maria a**me**pika chakula cha asubuhi. *Maria **has cooked** breakfast.*

Tu**me**kula chakula cha mchana katika Mkahawa wa Masinga.
*We **have eaten** lunch at the Masinga restaurant.*

Mwalimu a**me**fika mapema. *The teacher **has arrived** early.*
Chakula ki**me**iva. *The food **has been cooked**.*

When describing two or more actions that have happened in the past, only the most recently completed action will take the -*me*- tense marker. The other verbs will take -*li*-.

Ni**li**amka mapema na ni**me**pika chakula.
*I **woke up** early, and **I have made** breakfast.*

Nilimpeleka mtoto shuleni na nimeenda ofisini.
*I **dropped** the child at school, and **I have gone** to the office.*

However, when there are multiple actions or a narration of things that have happened in the past, remember that the first verb will take tense marker -*li*-. Each verb after that will take the -*ka*- marker of narration, and only the most recent verb that *has just been* completed will take -*me*-.

Ni**li**amka mapema, ni**ka**pika chakula cha asubuhi, ni**ka**safisha nyumba, na sasa ni**me**maliza kufagia.
*I **woke up** early, **cooked** breakfast, **cleaned** the house, and now I **have just finished** sweeping.*

Ni**li**enda sokoni asubuhi ni**ka**nunua viatu, ni**ka**mpelekea mwanafunzi shuleni na sasa ni**me**rudi kutoka shuleni.
*I **went** to the market in the morning, **bought** shoes, **took** them to the student in the school and I have just returned from school.*



Zoezi O

Translate the following sentences into Kiswahili using the *-me-* tense marker.

1. He has cooked the food.
2. He has arrived in Tanzania.
3. Mwajuma has washed all the clothes.
4. She has driven the children to school.
5. They have bought many shoes from the market today.
6. Parents have arrived in the school for the meeting.
7. The chefs have prepared delicious foods.
8. Mwajuma has bought many spices from the market.
9. It has started raining.
10. I have eaten breakfast at her house.



Zoezi P

Write 10 sentences using the *-me-* tense marker. Use the the following verbs in your sentence constructions.

-safisha | -pakua | -uza | -lipa | -maliza | -anza

-agiza | -paka | -lala | -chomeka | -tia | -weka



Zoezi Q

As you are walking to the library one afternoon, you meet a friend who is heading to another building on campus. Exchange greetings and discuss three things you have been doing or have recently just completed.



Zoezi R

One of your classmates has gone downtown to run errands. Text them to check on their whereabouts and whether the errands they were running have been completed.

The Negated Present Perfect –ja– Tense

The *-ja-* tense is used in Kiswahili to imply that an event has not yet happened, or some anticipated results have not yet been achieved. It is used together with the negative subject prefix of the verbal structure.

Bado **sija**pika chakula cha asubuhi.
*I **have not yet** cooked breakfast.*

Bado wanafunzi **hawaja**fika shuleni.
*The students **have not yet** arrived at school.*

Bado wauzaji **hawaja**fungua soko.
*The sellers **have not (yet)** opened the markets.*

Bado mwalimu **haja**enda shuleni.
*The teacher **has not (yet)** gone to school.*

Monosyllabic verbs that contain *-ja-* do not retain the *-ku-* infinitive in their negation.

Ni**me**kula chakula leo.	*I **have** eaten food today.*
Sijala chakula leo.	*I **have not** eaten food today.*
A**me**kuja nyumbani asubuhi.	*He **has** come home today.*
Hajaja nyumbani asubuhi.	*He **has not** come home today.*

Notice in these examples that the negative form of the verb is not *Sijakula* nor *Hajakuja*; while the *-ku-* is needed when the verb tense *-me-* is used in the positive sense, the *-ku-* is dropped when the phrase is expressed in the negative form. Here are some additional examples of the different negated forms of tenses that have already been covered in previous units.

Tu**li**kula chakula cha Afrika Mashariki.
We ate East African food.

Hatukula chakula cha Afrika Mashariki.
*We **did not** eat East African food.*

Tu**me**kula chakula cha Afrika Mashariki.
*We **have** eaten East African food.*

Hatujala chakula cha Afrika Mashariki.
*We **have not** eaten East African food.*

Hatutakula chakula cha Afrika Mashariki.
*We **will not** eat East African food.*



Zoezi S

Change the following sentences from the *-me-* tense to the *-ja-* tense and provide a reason for why the action in the sentence has not yet happened.

Mfano:

Nimevinunua viatu hivi leo asubuhi. Sijavinunua viatu hivi leo asubuhi.

1. Amefika leo asubuhi.
2. Wanafunzi wamemnunulia mwalimu zawadi.
3. Leo asubuhi, watoto wamekula chakula cha asubuhi mapema.
4. Wamemwandikia meneja wa Kampuni barua leo asubuhi.
5. Wamenunua vyakula vingi.
6. Amewaalika wageni wengi nyumbani kwake.
7. Wamepotea njia ya kwenda msikitini.
8. Nimefurahi kumaliza kazi zangu.
9. Amekuja kumpeleka mtoto shuleni.
10. Nimerudi nyumbani.



Zoezi T

You are going on a field trip with Joseph one Saturday morning. You receive the following email from Joseph. Write an appropriate response.

Vipi rafiki,

Habari za asubuhi? Ninatumai uko salama leo. Habari za ziara ya pwani leo? Samahani nimechelewa sana kufika huko leo. Nimechelewa kwa sababu sijaweza kupata basi la saa moja. Pia nimeamka saa hivi kwa hivyo bado sijaoga, sijavaa mavazi mwafaka, na pia sijala chakula cha asubuhi. Nitajiunga nanyi baadaye mwendo wa saa saba hivi mchana.

Wasalaam,

Joseph



Zoezi U

Listen to the radio advertisement for a new restaurant that is opening in your town and answer the questions below.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Je matangazo ya biashara huwa na maana?
2. Je lugha inayotumiwa katika matangazo ya biashara huwa inawalenga wateja wote au wateja fulani tu?
3. Je lugha ilitumiwa namna gani katika tangazo hili?
4. Je kuna umuhimu wa kuweka mauzo ya bei nafuu wakati unapotengeneza tangazo hili?
5. Taja umuhimu wa kutaja mahali na wakati wa kufunguliwa kwa mkahawa wa shirika la Glamo katika kifungu hiki?



Zoezi V

Read the descriptions of two restaurants below. If you had the opportunity to go to one of the restaurants, which restaurant would you go to and why?

Mkahawa wa Asali na Dough Nairobi, Kenya	**Mkahawa wa Cinnamon Zanzibar, Tanzania**
Huu ni mkahawa wa kisasa ambao una vyakula vyenye ladha tamu. Vyakula ni vya hali ya juu na huduma ni za haraka. Huwa tunauza vinywaji na vyakula mbambali siku nzima. Tunaanza kwa kahawa na chai wakati wa asubuhi, kisha kuna, chakula cha mchana na chakula cha jioni. Unaweza kula ndani ya mkahawa au unaweza kwenda na vyakula nje ya mkahawa. Mkahawa una pizza maalum, na vyakula kutoka tamaduni mbalimbali za Kenya, duka la mikate, na baa. Lishe safi na yenye afya imepewa kipaumbele na watu wengi hapa mjini Nairobi.	Mkahawa wa Cinnamon ni wa kusisimua. Uko kwenye ghorofa ya kwanza. Una baa ambayo iko wazi na unaweza kukata kiu chako kwa bia baridi, au mivinyo mbali mbali ya kokteli. Mkahawa wa Cinnamon uko mahali ambapo pana mandhari mazuri ya kisiwa cha Zanzibar. Unaweza kutulia na kutazama jua linapotua na kubarizi vema. Iwapo unatafuta kitu spesheli tunaweza kutenga sehemu zingine za faragha kwenye baa kwa sherehe za kibinafsi wakati wa jioni. Menyu za Cinnamon zina vyakula vya kimataifa kutoka sehemu kama Asia, Uropa, Marekani na kwingeneko duniani. Kuna vyakula kama vile samaki, vibanzi, saladi na kadhalika.

Zoezi W

Write a review for a restaurant that you visited recently. Include details about customer service, quality of food, and overall cost. Be prepared to share your review with your classmates and to respond to any questions that they may have.

Zoezi X

You are visiting Diani Beach in Mombasa, Kenya with some classmates and you need to choose a restaurant for lunch. Use the internet to find a restaurant that appeals to you. Be ready to discuss the reason for your choice and what you plan to order. Note that many of the menus will be in English.

Cultural Explorations

Commercial food options in East Africa are rapidly expanding, with fast food options (burgers, pizza, wings) taking their place alongside more traditional, local options. Local food will vary by region with areas along the coast showing a greater reliance on seafood than areas in the interior that rely on farming and livestock for sustenance. One thing that remains relatively clear across East Africa is the influence of Indian cuisine, with its heavy use of spices and curries.

Certain staple foods are common across East Africa, although they are usually accompanied by regional specialties. *Wali* (rice) is very common and is used in *pilau* (rice mixed with beef or vegetables, and flavored with various aromatic species) and *biryani* (rice made with traditional Swahili or Indian spices and prepared with chicken). Another common food is *chapati*, an unleavened flat bread with Indian origins that is eaten throughout East Africa and the Arabian peninsula. *Matoke* (green bananas) is a staple food in Uganda and in the Kisii region in Kenya, while *ugali* (corn mash) is a staple for the Luhya community in Kenya.



While deep frying has long been a common practice in preparing foods like *mandazi* (a type of a doughnut) and *sambusa* (a triangular pastry with a savory filling that includes spiced potatoes, onions, beef, peas and other vegetables), the increased number of fast-food chains and westernization has greatly increased the frequency with which East Africans eat fried foods. This has led to new recipes for preparing traditional, East African foods like transforming boiled arrowroot into crunchy chips or boiled sweet potatoes into sweet potato fries.

Expectations for dining in a restaurant are largely the same as any other part of the world, but with a few important distinctions for those from the United States. Wait staff are generally courteous but are focused on efficiency and may not check in on you during the meal unless requested. It is common at a sit-down restaurant for a customer to order all their food at once rather than ordering drinks while looking at the menu and then considering dessert at the end of the meal. Unlike the practice in many casual U.S. restaurants, there is no expectation that you will clear your table or dispose of your trash before you leave. Another major difference between East African restaurants and those in the U.S. is the practice of tipping your server; tipping is in

no way expected and may create confusion for the restaurant staff as to why only the server is being tipped and not the kitchen or other staff.

Food delivery is generally limited to high-volume chain restaurants in larger cities and is handled by services like Bolt Food or regional services like Jumia. Deliveries are generally by bike rather than car as it is cheaper and much faster to navigate through traffic. Deliveries are often paid using MPESA on the phone rather than through credit cards or cash upon delivery, so payment is made in advance and, again, tipping is not expected.

Cultural Reflections

With a classmate or in a small group, discuss the cultural information you have just read by discussing the questions below.

1. What are some staple foods or dishes that are eaten in your community and/or region? Do these staples vary from what you grew up eating?
2. What are the cultural or international influences on the foods eaten in your region? Why are these international cuisines present or influential in your region?
3. Do you prefer to cook the majority of your meals, or do you prefer food from restaurants? If you were living in East Africa, would your answer change?
4. Compare and contrast the etiquette in restaurants where you live with that of East Africa. Which system or type of restaurant do you prefer and why?

Key Vocabulary

Adjectives

-hali ya juu high quality
ajabu amazing
bure free; free of charge
-ema pleasant; kind
hicho that; that one (close to the listener)
juu high; up
maalum special
muafaka appropriate
nusu half
nzima full
-pana broad; wide
pole slow; sorry
robo quarter
-tamu delicious; sweet
-kali bitter
tele plenty

Adverbs

bado not yet; still
haraka fast
haraka haraka very fast
katikati in between
pole pole very slowly
punde soon
tayari already; ready
tena again; then
upesi quickly; fast
upesi upesi very quickly
wastani medium
tafadhali please

Conjunctions

ili in order to; so that

Nouns

ada fee
agizo order
barabara; barabara kuu street; highway
barua letter
basi bus
bendi band
biringani; **biringanya** eggplant
borohoa; kihembe thick broth of cooked beans
brokoli broccoli
burudani fun; entertainment
chaguo choice
chapati Indian flat bread
chokoleti chocolate
duka la mikate bakery
dunia world; earth

faragha seclusion; privacy
gharama cost; charge
harufu smell
huduma service
isikirimu ice cream
jengo building
jua sun; sunshine
juu top
kabeji cabbage
kamba lobster; shrimp
karambezi raspberry
keki cake
kibanzi; vibanzi french fry; french fries
kimanda toast
kiu thirst
kokteli cocktail
lita liter
maana meaning; sense
mandazi bun; buns
madafu coconut water
mahali place
malipo charge; payment
mara instance; time
meneja manager
mgando yoghurt
mhudumu server; waiter
mkahawa restaurant; cafe
mteja customer; client
muziki wa bluu Blues music
muziki wa klasiki classical music
mwenzi companion; friend
mwisho end
ngisi squid
ngoma drum; music
njugu groundnuts; peanuts
nusu half
mpunga rice plant
pesa money
pweza octopus
risiti ya malipo payment receipt
shida problem; trouble
shilingi shilling
shirika organization; corporation
spesheli special
steki steak
tangawizi ginger root
ujumbe message
utu personality
virutubisho nutrients
vitafunio snacks

Verbs

-agiza to order
-amua to decide
-burudika to be entertained
-chagua to choose

-fikia to arrive at
-fikiri to think
-funga to close
-fungua to open; to unlock
-hudumia to serve; to assist
-kata kiu chako to quench your thirst
-leta to bring
-lipa to pay
-kuwa na kiu to be thirsty
-kusikia/hisi kiu to be thirsty
-kuwa na utu to be personable
-oza to rot
-haribika to spoil
-pokea to receive
-ponda to crush; to pound; to mash
-potea to get lost; to be lost
-subiri to wait for
-tarajia to hope; to expect
-tazamia to look forward to; to anticipate
-toa huduma to serve; to provide service
-tuma to send
-tulia to relax; to quiet down
-wahi to venture; to undertake
-weka to keep; to put

Key Phrases

Asante kwa kunialika. Thank you for inviting me.
Hamna shida. No problem.
Idadi gani…? What amount…?; What number…?
Kiasi gani? How much?
Muda gani? How long?
Njia gani? How? (in what/which way)
Samahani. I'm sorry.
Subirini kidogo. Wait a moment / a little.
Wakati wa (kuagiza)… Ordering time…

5.3 Kununua vyakula sokoni

Zoezi A

Below is an image of an open-air market in Arusha. Work with a classmate to name all the vegetables that you see.



Je, wewe unapenda mboga gani kati ya hizi na kwa nini? Taja majina ya mboga hizi?



sukuma wiki



pilipili kali



kabeji

cucember



tango



biringani



dhania



brokoli



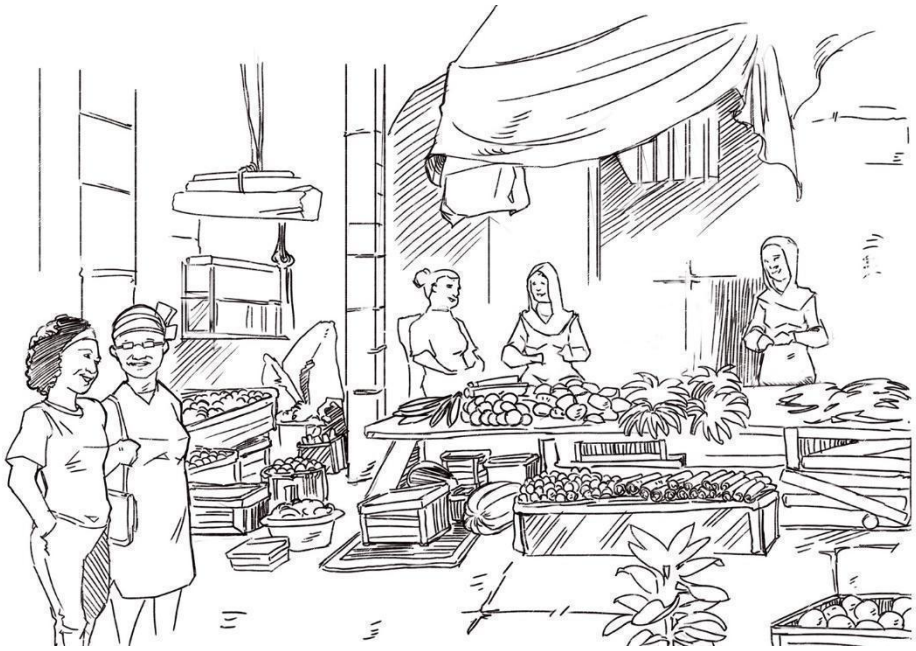
uyoga



maharagwe ya kifaransa

Zoezi B

Shamila and Farida go to an open-air market one afternoon to buy some fruits and vegetables. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Muuzaji: Shikamoo bibi Farida? Vipi Shamila? Habari za mchana?

Farida: Sisi hatujambo? Je, wewe waambaje? Habari za kazi?

Muuzaji: Kazi inaendelea vizuri bila shaka. Je, mngependa kununua nini leo?

Farida: Nimemsindikiza Shamila kuja sokoni kwa sababu angependa kununua matunda na mboga.

Muuzaji: Safi. Shamila ungependa kununua matunda gani?

Shamila: Ningependa kununua maembe, machungwa, mananasi, matofaa na parachichi.

Muuzaji: Leo tuna matunda mengi ambayo yametoka shambani leo hii. Kuna parachichi, maembe, machungwa, tikiti maji, matofaa, mananasi, ndimu, mapapai, nyanya na kadhalika. Je, ungependa matunda gani?

Shamila: Ningependa machungwa manne, maembe yaliyoiva matano na matofaa sita.

Muuzaji: Sawa nitakuuzia kwa bei nzuri sana. Machungwa manne kwa shilingi elfu mbili. Machungwa haya ni matamu na yenye jusi nyingi. Maembe makubwa matano kwa shilingi elfu tano. Maembe haya yana ladha nzuri sana. Matofaa sita kwa shilingi elfu nane. Kwa jumla matunda yote yatakuwa shilingi elfu kumi na tano.

Shamila: Alaa! Unauza matofaa na maembe bei ghali sana. Tafadhali punguza bei, mimi ni mteja wako wa mara kwa mara.

Muuzaji: Matunda haya ni matamu na yenye ladha kabisa. Yametoka shambani leo asubuhi. Kwa hivyo bei hiyo ni nzuri.

Shamila: Haiwezekani! Tafadhali, punguza bei kidogo. Nina shilingi elfu kumi pekee. Punguza shilingi elfu tano kutoka kwa bei ya jumla.

Muuzaji: Nitakupunguzia na shilingi elfu mbili. Utalipa shilingi elfu kumi na tatu. Nitakuongeza chungwa hili.

Shamila: Asante. Hizi hapa pesa. Tafadhali niwekee matunda hayo ndani ya mkoba huu.

Muuzaji: Asanteni na karibuni tena siku nyingine.

Shamila na Farida: Asante sana. Kwaheri ya kuonana.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila angependa kununua matunda gani?
2. Shamila angependa kununua machungwa mangapi?
3. Shamila angependa kununua matofaa mangapi?
4. Mwuzaji alimwuzia Shamila matunda yote kwa bei gani?
5. Mwuzaji alimpunguzia Shamila shilingi ngapi?

Zoezi C

One evening Joseph's host mother asks him to stop by the market on his way home to buy some vegetables. Read the conversation between Joseph and the vendor and answer the questions that follow.



Muuzaji: Karibu sana kuna mboga nyingi ambazo tumepokea leo kutoka shambani sana.

Joseph: Asante mama. Habari za jioni?

Muuzaji: Salama. Na wewe je?

Joseph: Niko salama. Ningependa kununua mboga.

Muuzaji: Karibu sana leo nina mboga aina mbali mbali ambazonzuri sana na nimefunga vifungu vikubwa vikubwa. Je, ungependa kununua mboga gani?

Joseph: Ninataka sukuma wiki vifungu viwili na pia vifungu viwili vya mchicha. Ningependa kilo moja ya vitunguu na kilo mbili za nyanya, pilipili hoho tatu na kitunguu saumu kimoja.

Muuzaji: Vifungu viwili vya sukuma wiki ni shilingi elfu moja, mchicha ni shilingi elfu mbili, kilo moja ya vitunguu ni shilingi elfu tatu. Nyanya kilo mbili ni shilingi elfu nne. Pilipili hoho moja ni shilingi mia tisa kwa hivyo tatu ni shilingi elfu mbili na mia saba na kitunguu saumu kimoja ni shilingi mia tano. Kwa jumla kila kitu ni shilingi elfu kumi na tatu na mia mbili.

Joseph: Alaa! Mbona unauza kitunguu saumu na nyanya bei ghali hivyo? Wiki jana nilinunua kitunguu saumu kimoja kwa shilingi mia moja na nyanya kilo moja ilikuwa shilingi sabini. Bei ya leo ni ghali sana!

Muuzaji: Wiki hii bei ya bidhaa imeongezeka sana kwa sababu ya uhaba wa vyakula hivi. Mimi sipati faida yoyote.

Joseph: Tafadhali, punguza kidogo.

Muuzaji: Kwa kweli bei hii ni nzuri. Kwa sababu wewe ni mteja wangu wa kawaida nitapunguza shilingi ishirini kutoka kwa bei ya jumla.

Joseph: Sawa, ninashukuru. Pesa ndizo hizi.

Muuzaji: Asante. Nimeweka mboga zote ndani ya mkoba. Msalimie mama.

Joseph: Sawa nitamsalimu. Kwaheri.

Muuzaji: Kwaheri.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Joseph anataka kununua mboga gani?
2. Kwa nini bei ya nyanya na kitunguu saumu iko juu wiki hii?
3. Muuzaji amepunguza bei ya vitu kwa kiasi gani?
4. Wiki iliyopita Joseph alinunua nyanya na kitunguu saumu kwa bei gani?



Zoezi D

You have just arrived at Darajani market to buy fruits and vegetables for the evening meal. Hold a conversation with the seller. Indicate the type of fruits and vegetables you want as well as the quantity and quality. Make sure to bargain for a good deal!



Zoezi E

You are studying abroad in Kenya or Tanzania. One afternoon your host mother requests that you go to the market to buy a few fruits and vegetables for dinner. Role play the conversation with a classmate. In your conversations, talk about the dishes you would like to prepare, the ingredients and quantity you need to buy, and ask for a recommendation on where to buy them.



Zoezi F

Explore a few sites of famous open-air food markets in East Africa. Search online for videos or documentaries of open-air markets. Write a blog post about the open-air markets in East Africa.



Zoezi G

Using your blog post as a starting point, prepare a detailed presentation with visuals about various open-air markets in East Africa. Be prepared to compare and contrast with similar markets in your hometown.



Zoezi H

Joseph is sent to the supermarket on Saturday morning to buy a few food items for lunch. While at the supermarket, he realizes that he forgot his shopping list. He calls his host mother, Fatuma, to ask for her list of items that he needs to buy. Listen to their phone call and answer the questions below.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Kwa nini Joseph anampigia mama yake simu?
2. Mama alisema kuwa Joseph alihitaji kununua kiasi kigani cha unga ngano, maziwa, na mafuta ya mboga?
3. Joseph anahitaji kununua viungo gani?
4. Je, kwa nini Joseph hatanunua matunda katika Supermarket?
5. Je, Joseph atanunua vinywaji gani?



Zoezi I

You arrive home from the supermarket and realize that you accidentally forgot your orange shopping bag with your ingredients for lunch and the additional items you purchased. Call the supermarket to find out if they have seen your shopping bag at the stall. Provide clear details of the bag and the items in the bag. You and a classmate will need to take turns playing the vendor.



Zoezi J

After retrieving your grocery bag from the supermarket, you start preparing lunch and realize that the milk and meat you bought are not in good condition. Go to the supermarket customer service to complain about the spoiled food items and request a refund for these two items.



Zoezi K

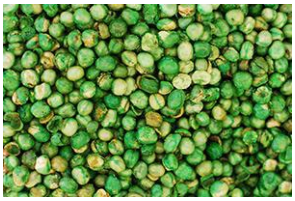
You are planning to go to the market on a market day to buy fresh produce and grains. Prepare five questions that you are likely to ask the vendors.

Zoezi L

Shamila goes to the store in town that specializes in cereals and grains to buy what her host family will need for the month. Look at the vocabulary below as you read her conversation with the vendor and then answer the questions that follow.



ndengu



njegere



maharagwe



mchele



ngano



mahindi



mtama



wimbi

Muuzaji: Habari za jioni dada? Karibu nikuuzie nafaka mbalimbali. Leo nina nafaka safi kabisa.

Shamila: Salama. Kweli ninaona una nafaka nzuri sana.

Muuzaji: Je, ungependa nikuuzie nafaka gani?

Shamila: Ningependa maharagwe haya ya manjano, njegere, mchele, na mahindi.

Muuzaji: Kilo moja ya maharagwe ya manjano ni shilingi mia saba, kilo moja ya njegere ni shilingi mia tano na kilo moja ya mahindi mabichi ni shilingi mia mbili hamsini na mchele aina ya pishori ni shilingi mia tatu kwa kilo moja.

Shamila: Ala! Mbona unauza nafaka bei ghali hivyo. Wiki jana nilinunua nafaka hizi na hazikuwa ghali hivyo.

Muuzaji: Bei yangu si ghali. Nafaka hizi ni nzuri na safi sana. Ungependa kiasi gani kisha nitakupunguzia kwa bei ya jumla ya vitu vyote.

Shamila: Ningependa kilo mbili za maharagwe ya manjano na kilo mbili za njegere na pia kilo nne za mahindi na mchele kilo nne.

Muuzaji: Mchele kilo nne, kilo mbili za njegere, maharagwe ya manjano kilo mbili, na mahindi kilo nne kwa jumla zitakuwa shilingi elfu nne na mia sita. Nitakupunguzia shilingi mia mbili kwa kila kitu. Kwa hivyo utalipa shilingi elfu nne na mia nne.

Shamila: Ninashukuru japo nilitaka kulipa shilingi elfu nne kwa kila kitu.

Muuzaji: Ukilipa shilingi elfu nne mimi sitapata faida yoyote. Bidhaa hizi ni safi sana na ni za hali ya juu. Ninajua utazifurahia.

Shamila: Je, utaniongeza kitu chochote?

Muuzaji: Bila shaka nitakuongeza glasi moja ya mchele na pia njegere kidogo. Wacha nikupimie nafaka zako.

Shamila: Asante sana. Pesa ndizo hizi.

Muuzaji: Asante. Karibu tena wakati mwingine.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Je, Shamila alienda sokoni kununua nafaka gani?
2. Je, Shamila alinunua kiasi gani cha kila nafaka?
3. Je, muuzaji alimpunguzia bei ya jumla kwa shilingi ngapi?
4. Je, muuzaji alimuongeza Shamila aina gani ya nafaka?

Zoezi M

Joseph and Shamila discuss their food preferences among things they have tried in Tanzania. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions below.



dalasini



pilipili



jira



tangawizi



kukumanga



karafuu



zafarani



manjano

Eleza iwapo sentensi hizi ni kweli au si kweli.

1. Shamila hapendi chai ya maziwa na pia hatumii sukari.
2. Shamila hapendi pilau.
3. Joseph anapenda sana nyama iliyookwa.
4. Shamila anapenda chakula chenye pilipili kali.
5. Joseph hapendi chakula chenye pilipili kali.

Zoezi N

Joseph and Matata stop by the butcher's shop one evening on their way home from class. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Matata: Habari za jioni?

Muuzaji: Nzuri sana. Karibu Matata. Ungependa kunua nyama gani leo?

Matata: Je, mna nyama gani leo?

Muuzaji: Tuna aina mbali mbali za nyama. Kuna nyama ya ng'ombe, nyama ya nguruwe, nyama ya mbuzi, samaki, na pia nyama ya kuku.

Matata: Ningependa kilo moja ya nyama ya nguruwe.

Muuzaji: Sawa nitakukatia nyama nzuri ambayo haina mifupa na mafuta mengi.

Matata: Tafadhali uikatekate nyama hiyo. Ni pesa ngapi?

Muuzaji: Kilo moja ya nyama ya nguruwe ni shilingi mia tano. Je, na wewe ungependa nyama yoyote?

Joseph: Mimi ningependa kilo moja na nusu ya nyama ya mbuzi.

Muuzaji: Tuna nyama ya mbuzi ilichinjwa leosana. Kilo moja ni shilingi mia sita.

Joseph: Sawa. Ukatekate nyama hiyo pia. Itakuwa rahisi kuandaa nikifika nyumbani.

Muuzaji: Sawa sawa subirini kidogo.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Je, kuna aina gani ya nyama katika duka hili la nyama?
2. Je, Matata alinunua aina gani ya nyama?
3. Je, Joseph alinunua aina gani ya nyama?
4. Je, Joseph alinunua kiasi gani cha nyama? Alilipa pesa ngapi kwa nyama aliyoinunua?
5. Je, kwa nini Joseph alitaka muuzaji aikatekate nyama yake?

Zoezi O

You and a group of Kiswahili classmates would like to work together to prepare the Swahili dish pictured to the right. Make a shopping list of the food items you need to buy in order to prepare this meal for five people.





Zoezi P

Roleplay a scene in an open-air market where you need to purchase all the items needed to prepare the Swahili dish above and any additional items you would like to purchase.

Sarufi: JI–MA noun class

Unlike nouns in the noun classes that have been discussed thus far, nouns in the JI-MA class do not have a specific prefix for their singular forms. However, all nouns in this class take *ma-* as their prefix in the plural. The JI-MA class contains a variety of noun categories including:

- manufactured products (cars, blankets, etc.)
- natural or constructed places (lakes, bridges, markets, etc.)
- abstract or concrete concepts
- parts of the body
- fruits and other natural objects
- things that cannot be counted (water, oil, etc.)
- augmentatives
- Nouns that do not change in plural and singular forms. In sentence formation, they take *li-* in both singular and plural forms.

When a JI-MA noun is the subject of the sentence, agreement must be made between the subject and the verb. This noun class uses *li-* as the verbal prefix when the subject is singular and *ya-* in plural for sentence formation.

Tunda hili **li**meiva.	*This **fruit** has gotten ripe.*
Matunda haya **ya**meiva.	*These **fruits** have gotten ripe.*
Jicho **li**nauma.	*The **eye** is hurting.*
Macho **ya**nauma.	*The **eyes** are hurting.*
Jani **li**mekauka.	*The **leaf** has dried.*
Majani **ya**mekauka.	*The **leaves** have dried.*
Tofaa **li**likuwa baya.	*The **apple** had gone bad.*
Matofaa **ya**likuwa mabaya.	*The **apples** had gone bad.*

Note in the second set of sentences that the adjective *baya* has prefixes that agree with the noun *(ma)tofaa*.

There are some nouns that are always singular in English that are always plural in Kiswahili. These include *maji* (water), *mafuta* (oil), *maziwa* (milk).

Maji **ya**memwagika.	*The **water** has been poured.*
Maziwa **ya**meganda.	*The **milk** has gone bad.*

Zoezi Q

Andika wingi wa matunda yafuatayo.



chungwa

_____



embe

_____



limau

_____



nanasi

_____



parachichi

_____



tikiti maji

_____



zabibu

_____



nyanya

_____



stroberi

_____



zeituni

_____



tende

_____



tofaa

_____

Zoezi R

Badilisha sentensi zifuatazo kwa hali ya wingi.

1. Mama amenunua limau chache.
2. Nanasi kutoka kwa muuzaji huyo huwa na ladha chungu.
3. Hindi hili limeungua. Sitaweza kulila.
4. Embe la mtoto limeanguka sakafuni.
5. Chungwa ambalo nilinunua leo asubuhi lilikuwa limeoza.
6. Jiko lake ni bei ghali sana.
7. Duka la nafaka liko sehemu ya mwisho wa soko.
8. Nilikunywa maji ya dafu kwa mara ya kwanza mjini Mombasa.

Zoezi S

Watch one of the videos below and write a brief summary (one to two paragraphs) in Kiswahili, including a discussion of the food options that are shown. Be prepared to share your summary with the class.



Zanzibar: Spices, Slaves and the Spirit of Independence

tinyurl.com/afxm4ayw



Spent 24 Hours in Stonetown, Zanzibar | Street Food

tinyurl.com/yj9uw6ny



The Best Zanzibar Street Food at Forodhani

tinyurl.com/2d4rm7es

Zoezi T

During a weekend visit to Stone Town Zanzibar, Shamila and Joseph buy some food from the vendors. Read their conversation with the food vendors and answer the questions that follow.

Muuzaji: Hamjambo. Ninatumai mko salama. Karibuni sana kwa kibanda chetu! Tuna vyakula vizuri na vitamu sana.

Shamila: Asante sana. Vyakula vinapendeza sana. Je, mna vyakula gani hapa?

Muuzaji: Hapa tuna mishikaki, mayai ya kuchemshwa na kachumbari, bajia, mutura, mahindi choma, vibanzi na sambusa. Je, mgependa kujaribu vyakula gani?

Shamila: Mimi ningependa kuonja kwanza kabla nifanye maamuzi kwa sababu sijawahi kula vyakula hivi.

Muuzaji: Unaweza kuonja bila shaka. Ungependa kuonja vyakula gani?

Shamila: Ningependa kuonja mshikaki na bajia. Joseph wewe ungependa kuonja vyakula vyovyote?

Joseph: Mimi ningependa kujaribu mutura na kachumbari.

Muuzaji: Sawa nitawapa vipande vidogo muonje.

Shamila: Mmmm mshikaki huu ni mtamu sana. Pia ninapenda ladha ya bhajia. Joseph chakula chako kikoje?

Joseph: Ninapenda sana ladha ya mutura. Lakini ningependa kuongeza pilipili kidogo. Mimi hupenda pilipili kali.

Muuzaji: Nina furaha kuwa mnavipenda vyakula hivi. Je niwauzie kiasi gani?

Shamila: Mimi ningependa mshikaki mmoja na bhajia sahani moja.

Joseph: Je, unapimaje mutura?

Muuzaji: Vipande ni bei tofauti. Kuna kipande cha shilingi mia moja, mia mbili au mia mbilia hamsini. Ukipenda pia ninaweza kupima kwa kilo.

Joseph: Nikatie kipande cha shilingi mia mbili hamsini. Unipe kachumbari na vipande vya pilipili kali.

Muuzaji: Sawa sawa. Karibuni mkae na mfurahie vyakula vyenu. Dada utalipa jumla ya shilingi mia tano kwa bhajia sahani moja na mshikaki. Mngependa vinywaji vyovyote?

Shamila: Mimi ningependa soda baridi ya Fanta.

Joseph: Mimi nipe soda baridi ya Coke.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila na Joseph waliagiza vinywaji gani?
2. Shamila aliagiza vyakula gani kutoka kwa kibanda cha barabarani?
3. Je, Joseph aliagiza vyakula gani kutoka kwa kibanda cha barabarani?
4. Kwa nini Shamila na Joseph walivionja vyakula kabla ya kuvinunua?
5. Shamila na Joseph walilipa jumla ya pesa ngapi kwa vyakula vyao ?

Zoezi U

A friend in your hometown would like to know more about food buying habits in East Africa compared to your hometown. For example, how often groceries are purchased, where groceries are purchased, whether one is able to haggle for prices, and what types of food are available at the market or grocery store. Create a presentation with pictures to compare and contrast the cultural norms surrounding food buying.

Cultural Explorations

It is common in East Africa to find open-air markets with vendors selling a wide variety of goods and services. These might range from fresh produce, grains, and meat (butchered and alive) to shoes, clothes, and other accessories, and even services like bicycle repair, shoe repair, and tailoring. In urban areas, the markets are typically open daily and are a source of livelihood for many people in the *jua-kali* sector (skilled/informal trades) and other small businesses. In rural areas, markets are only open on specific days, and vendors travel around their region to sell goods and services at different markets each day.



Most open-air markets are organized and run by local governments. Sometimes they will provide special buildings and stalls for the vendors, but markets may also be set up along busy roads or areas with high foot-traffic. The city council and municipalities are also responsible for collecting fees and for overseeing the general maintenance, cleanliness, and security of the markets. The most famous and historical open-air markets in East Africa are the Kariakoo Market in Dar es Salaam, the Gikomba Market in Nairobi, and the Darajani Market in Zanzibar.

Many people go to the market each day to shop for vegetables, meat, fish, or other perishable items. They may supplement those purchases with trips to a local store or supermarket, but that is often for the sake of convenience as the food in the markets is generally fresher and cheaper. Supermarket purchases are generally focused on non-perishable commercial products, although there is a growing reliance on grocery stores for all food purchases, especially in more affluent communities.

Bargain shopping and haggling over prices is a common and expected practice at open air markets. It is normal for a seller to price goods for more than they are worth with an expectation that the customer will attempt to negotiate that price down; a skillful customer may negotiate down to the minimum price the seller is willing to accept, while a less skillful customer helps to boost the seller's profits. It is also common for buyers to ask for some small, additional items to balance out or sweeten a deal. For example, if one buys two kilograms of tomatoes, one might ask the seller to throw in a small amount of cilantro or an onion.

Haggling is not generally expected over commercially produced products like soap or tea that the seller has purchased and for which there are clear costs that have to be recouped. For much

the same reason, haggling is not an accepted practice in convenience stores and supermarkets where all items are sold with set prices.



With the expansion of many towns and cities, and urbanization in general, there is an increase in the number of new malls and shopping centers. In the malls, the stalls are partitioned and owned by different people who sell a variety of goods and services. In most malls, particularly those that are not in high-end places, the commodities do not have fixed prices, and customers are able to negotiate for prices. There is a general trend to move to cashless transactions given the challenges presented by the rise in insecurity. Most transactions between buyers and sellers are through mobile money platforms.

One such mobile money platform popular in East Africa is M-Pesa – M for mobile and *Pesa* for the Kiswahili word for money. M-Pesa was launched in Kenya in 2007 as a mobile-based money transfer and micro-financing service and has expanded and is now being used widely in East Africa. M-Pesa users can deposit, withdraw, transfer money, access credit and savings accounts, and pay for goods and services using their mobile devices, even non-smartphones! It is typical for people to pay for goods and services using mobile money options rather than debit or credit cards.

Cultural Reflections

With a classmate or in a small group, discuss the cultural information you have just read by answering the questions below.

1. Are there open-air markets where you live? What goods and services are sold there, and how often are the markets open? Who oversees the market schedule and vendors? How does this compare with what you have read of open-air markets in East Africa?
2. Think about where you purchase the majority of your food and goods – at an open-air market, local grocery store, supermarket chain, online…? What drives your decision to purchase your products this way?
3. Consider the practice of haggling – what skills are needed in order to be successful in bargaining for a better price? Is this something that you have done recently or have had the opportunity to do in the past? If this is not a common practice in your culture or region, why is that the case? Or, if it is, what makes haggling an option? Based on the reading above and what you already know of East African culture, why is haggling and bargaining for a good price part of market culture?
4. What payment options are available in your culture or region that are similar to M-Pesa? Are these options available to all or to a select few? In what situations would you use mobile money services like this?

Key Vocabulary

Adjectives

-kali hot; severe

Nouns

bhajia deep fried potato slices that have been dipped in egg wash and flour
balungi grapefruit
bamia okra
bidhaa merchandise; goods
biringani eggplant
bizari curry powder
brokoli broccoli
chenza tangerine
chungwa orange
choroko green peas
dafu coconut water
dalasini cinnamon
embe mango
faida profit; benefit
fenesi jack fruit
gramu gram
haradali nyeupe white mustard
haradali nyeusi black mustard
hira cumin
iliki cardamom
jua-kali skilled trades/informal trades
karafuu clove
karoti carrot
kiasi quantity; a small amount
kibanda stall; cabin
kifungu bunch; cluster
kilo kilogram
kisamvu cassava leaves
mafuta ya kupika cooking oil
maini liver
majani chai tea leaves
mali wealth
manjano turmeric
mfupa bone
mgogwe tree tomato
mkoba bag; sack
mnunuzi buyer
mtama sorghum; milo
matunda ya karakara passion fruit
mwuzaji seller
muwa sugar cane
nanasi pineapple
nazi coconut
ndimu lime
njegere pigeon peas
orodha list
papai papaya; pawpaw fruit
parachichi avocado
pera guava

piga bei bargain
pilipili iliyosagwa ground pepper
... kali chili pepper
... manga black pepper
...nyeupe white pepper
... saumu pepper garlic
... ya kijani green pepper
... zilizokaushwa dried pepper
sabuni ya mikono hand soap
sakafu floor
saumu; kitunguu saumu garlic; garlic clove
shashi ya meza napkins
stroberi strawberry
tofaa apple
tomoko custard apple
udaha cayenne pepper
ukwaju tamarind
uwatu fenugreek
uzani weight
vipimo quantity
viungo spices
zafarani saffron
zambarau plums
zeituni olives
zesta zest

Verbs

-anguka to fall; to drop
-badilisha to change; to alter
-funga to tie; to fasten
-mwaga to pour out; to spill
-nukia to have a nice smell
-nuka to smell
-pima to measure
-punguza to decrease; to reduce
-onja to taste
-oza to rot
-sahau to forget
-salimu to greet
-shukuru to thank
-shusha to reduce
-sindikiza to escort; to guide

Key Phrases

Bei gani? What is the price?
Bei ghali! Expensive price!
bei jumla total price
Bei rahisi! Cheap price!
Haiwezekani! Not possible!; It is impossible!
kwa bahati mbaya unfortunately; by bad luck
kwa jumla in total
Mbona...? Why...?; For what reason...?
panda bei rise in price
Punguza bei kidogo. Lower the price a little.
Tafadhali punguza bei. Please lower the price.

5.4 Kuandaa vyakula

Zoezi A

Shamila walks into the kitchen and finds Farida making breakfast. She greets Farida, and they talk about the foods that she is preparing. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Shamila: Habari za asubuhi bi Farida?

Farida: Salama. Umeamkaje?

Shamila: Nimeamka vizuri. Ninatumai pia wewe ulilala vizuri.

Farida: Nililala vizuri ninamshukuru mungu.

Shamila: Je, unaandaa nini? Ninaweza kukusaidia?

Farida: Ninaandaa kiamsha kinywa. Ninapika chai, mayai, na mandazi. Nimemaliza kuandaa mandazi. Unaweza kupika chai.

Shamila: Chai hupikwa vipi?

Farida: Weka sufuria kwenye jiko. Mwaga maziwa nusu lita na uyaache yachemke. Maziwa yakishachemka, ongeza maji nusu lita na uyaache yaendelee kuchemka. Kisha, ongeza majani chai nusu ya kijiko na nusu ya kijiko cha masala. Subiri chai ichemke. Chai ikishachemka ichunge na uiweke kwenye birika.

Shamila: Sawa mama nimeelewa hatua za kutengeneza chai. Je, niweke sukari kidogo kabla ya kuchunga?

Farida: Hapana. Usiweke sukari. Juma hatumii sukari. Sisi tutaweka sukari mezani.

Shamila: Sawa sawa. Chai itakuwa tayari hivi punde.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo

1. Je, Farida anaandaa vyakula gani kwa chakula cha asubuhi?
2. Je, bibi Farida amemaliza kuandaa vyakula gani?
3. Je, Shamila atafuata hatua gani kupika chai?
4. Je, Shamila ataongeza sukari kwa chai?

Zoezi B

Joseph offers to help his host mother to prepare the dinner meal. He talks with her about how to make *sukuma wiki*. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Joseph: Mama vipi? Unahitaji msaada wowote kuandaa chakula cha jioni?

Mama: Ndiyo unaweza kutengeneza sukuma wiki. Mimi nitapika ugali.

Joseph: Je, sukuma wiki hutengenezwaje?

Mama: Kwanza fungua kitita cha mboga kisha zitie kwenye sinki na uoshe kila tawi kwa utaratibu. Baada ya kuosha, katakata mboga kwa vipande vidogo. Tumia ubao wa kukata. Pia katakata kitunguu kimoja na nyanya mbili.

Joseph: Je, baada ya kuzikata mboga, nitazipikaje?

Mama: Weka sufuria safi kwenye jiko na uwashe moto. Sufuria ikishakuwa moto weka mafuta vijiko vinne. Mafuta yakishachemka, weka kitunguu kisha ukoroge. Vitunguu vikibadilika rangi na kuwa kahawia, ongeza nyanya kisha ukoroge. Nyanya zikishaiva ongeza mboga na uchanganye. Pika mboga kwa muda wa dakika tano. Ongeza chumvi kidogo na Royco ukipenda.

Joseph: Sawa sawa mama. Wacha nijaribu. Je, ukitaka kupika ugali unafuata hatua gani?

Mama: Kupika ugali unahitaji kuchemsha maji ninavyofanya sasa. Maji yakishachemka na kutokota, unahitaji kuongeza unga kidogo kidogo na kuukoroga. Baadaye, unahitaji kuusonga ugali kwa utaratibu na kuhakikisha kuwa unga unachanganyika vizuri na maji. Unahitaji kuendelea kuusonga ugali hadi uwe mgumu na laini.

Joseph: Utajuaje ugali umeiva vizuri?

Mama: Baada ya kuusonga ugali kwa muda wa takriban dakika kumi unahitaji kuhakikisha kuwa hakuna unga mkavu kwenye ugali na kuwa uko laini. Unaweza kuuonja. Ukishaiva unaupakua na kuuweka kwenye sahani.

Joseph: Hatua rahisi. Nitajaribu kuupika ugali siku nyingine.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Hatua nne muhimu za kupika sukuma wiki ni gani?
2. Kabla ya kuanza kupika sukuma wiki unahitaji kufanya nini?
3. Unahitaji vitu gani kupika sukuma wiki na ugali?
4. Hatua tatu muhimu za kupika ugali ni gani?

Zoezi C

You have already learned various verbs that relate to food preparation. Label the pictures that you can using the *-ku* infinitive form. Your teacher will help to fill in the verbs that you do not recognize.



_____



_____



_____



_____



_____



_____



_____



_____



_____

Zoezi D

Pre-reading Activity

Work with a classmate to review what you know about how East Africans prepare their food. What kinds of ingredients do they tend to use? Are there particular cooking methods that they appear to use more often? Provide specific examples.

Reading a Recipe

Below you will find a recipe for *pilau*, a very common dish in East Africa. Read through the list of ingredients with a classmate and then proceed to the instructions on how to make the dish.

Viungo

- nusu kilo mchele aina ya pishori
- nusu kilo nyama ya kuku
- mafuta ya kupikia
- chumvi
- kikombe kimoja cha njegere
- viazi mbatata vinne
- zabibu kavu kiasi upendacho
- vitunguu maji vikubwa vitatu
- karoti mbili kubwa
- nyanya mbili kubwa
- kijiko kimoja cha mdalasini uliosagwa
- kijiko kimoja kidogo cha pilipili manga
- kijiko kimoja cha bizari
- tangawizi iliyosagwa vijiko viwili

Jinsi ya kuandaa

1. Katakata nyama ya kuku kwa vipande vidogo kisha uvioshe.
2. Menya tangawizi, kisha uitie kwenye kinu na upondeponde.
3. Chambua na uoshe mchele kwa maji mengi kisha uuweke kando.
4. Chambua viazi na uvimenye katika vipande vidogo.
5. Katakata vitunguu maji pamoja na pilipili hoho.
6. Osha nyanya na karoti na uzikate katika vipande vidogo vidogo na uziweke kando tayari kwa kupika.
7. Osha njegere zako ziwe tayari.
8. Katika sufuria safi, tia vipande vya nyama ya kuku pamoja na viungo ulivyovitwanga, ongeza maji kiasi, weka kwenye moto na uviache vichemke.
9. Ikiwa ni nyama ya kuku wa kisasa, ichemshe kwa dakika tano kisha uiache na supu yake.
10. Iwapo ni nyama ya kuku ya kienyeji, ichemshe hadi itakapoiva kisha uiache na supu yake.
11. Kwenye sufuria safi mimina mafuta ya kupikia kisha uyaweke kwenye moto na usubiri yapate moto.
12. Kaanga vitunguu hadi vigeuke rangi ya dhahabu.
13. Tia pilipili hoho, koroga na kisha uongeze karoti, nyanya na uukoroge mchanganyiko wako vyema.

14. Ongeza viazi na usubiri vikaangike kidogo.
15. Weka mchanganyiko wa vitunguu thomu na vitunguu maji ulivyovitwanga kwenye mchanganyiko wako.
16. Ongeza viungo vya pilau vilivyosagwa kwenye mchanganyiko huo kisha uweke viungo vya pilau vizima ulivyokuwa umelowesha.
17. Ongeza njegere na ukoroge vyema, kisha uimimine nyama ya kuku na supu yake kwenye mchanganyiko huo.
18. Ongeza maji kiasi ili yaendane na kiasi cha mchele kisha uweke punje za zabibu kavu.
19. Hakikisha mchanganyiko wako una kiasi cha chumvi unachokipenda ikiwa ni kidogo ongeza.
20. Subiri vichemke kisha ongeza mchele kwenye mchanganyiko huo, koroga kiasi na ufunike.
21. Iwapo unatumia gesi kupika, tumia moto wa wastani ili pilau yako isije ikaungua.
22. Maji yakishakauka funua, changanya pilau yako vizuri kisha uifunike tena.
23. Subiri kwa dakika tano na kisha ufunue kuangalia kama mchele wako umeiva.
24. Wali ukiwa umeiva basi pishi lako la pilau litakuwa tayari kwa kuliwa ukiambatanisha kachumbari ili linoge zaidi.
25. Pakua na ufurahie kuila pilau yako!

Describing a Dish

It is common to be asked to describe a dish to someone who may be unfamiliar with it. Working with the same classmate, come up with two to three sentences that describe what *pilau* is. What is in it? How is it prepared? Be prepared to share your sentences with the class to see who has the best description. Your teacher may ask you to submit a written description that incorporates the good ideas from other groups.

Sarufi: Imperative

Imperatives are used to give commands and polite requests. You have been hearing and seeing imperatives since the beginning of your study of Kiswahili.

Tafadhali nyamaza!	*Please **be quie**t!*
Fungeni kitabu!	***Open** your book!*
Jibu maswali yafuatayo.	***Answer** the following questions.*

The singular form of the imperative is simply the verb root, which is how all verbs are listed in the key vocabulary at the end of each section. In most cases, that form will end in *-a*, like "*Fanya!*", "*Ngoja!*", and "*Andika!*". In the case of some borrowed verbs, you may see a different vowel, such as "*Karibu!*", "*Ambia!*", or "*Njoo!*".

To form the plural imperatives for verbs, you add the suffix *-ni*, but in the case of those verbs with a root ending in *-a*, that vowel will be changed to an *-e*.

umoja	wingi
Soma!	Someni!
Pika!	Pikeni!
Karibu!	Karibuni!

Kiswahili also has an imperative form that is closer to a polite suggestion. In that form, the singular and plural are marked with a subject prefix, *u-* and *m-* respectively, and the suffix *-ni* is not used. Verbs ending in the vowel *-a* also change to *-e* in both the singular and the plural.

Usome kitabu hiki.	***You should read** this book.*
Msome vitabu hivi	***You (pl) should read** these books.*
Urudi nyumbani mapema.	***You should come home** early.*
Mrudi nyumbani mapema.	***You (pl) should come home** early.*
Ujibu swali la mwalimu.	***You should answer** the teacher's question.*
Mjibu maswali ya walimu.	***You (pl) should answer** the teachers' questions.*



Zoezi E

Now that you know how infinitives are formed, go back to the recipe in *Zoezi D* and circle all the imperatives that you can find.



Zoezi F

You are planning a surprise party for a classmate and would like your other classmates to help with the party (cleaning up, preparation of dishes, inviting and attending to guests, etc). Write a group email explaining the party (when, where, why) and ask them to perform certain tasks. Use the imperative to assign tasks.

Mfano: John, tafadhali usafishe vyombo.



Zoezi G

Prepare a written recipe for one of your favorite dishes using the recipe in *Zoezi D* as a model. You might include pictures to help your readers visualize the dish.



Zoezi H

Share your favorite recipe (above) in class and be ready to respond to your classmates' questions.



Zoezi I

You are on a homestay visit with a Kenyan family and want to share something about food in your own culture. Write out a detailed description, including the steps to prepare the dish as well as any cultural significance the dish might have.

Sarufi: Passive Voice

As in English, Kiswahili uses active and passive voice. In active voice, the subject of the sentence performs the action of the verb. In passive voice, the subject of the sentence receives the action of the verb. Look at these two examples:

> Mama **alikipika** chakula cha asubuhi.
> *Mother **cooked** breakfast.*
>
> Chakula cha asubuhi **kilipikwa** na mama.
> *Breakfast **was cooked** by my mother.*

The first sentence is in the active voice, with the *mother* performing the action of cooking breakfast. The second sentence is in passive voice with *breakfast* as the subject of the sentence but receiving the action of being cooked. Note that in the passive voice the person performing the action (*mama*) is shifted to a position following the verb and is preceded by the preposition *na*, which is equivalent to the English word *by* in this context.

The passive voice is useful when you want to emphasize an action but have less interest in (or knowledge of) who performed the action.

> Kiswahili **kinasemwa** nchini Tanzania na Kenya.
> *Kiswahili **is spoken** in Tanzania and Kenya.*
>
> **Nitaolewa** mwaka ujao.
> *I **will be getting married** next year.*
>
> Tarakilishi yangu **iliibiwa**.
> *My laptop **was stolen**.*
>
> Viatu **vilipigwa** rangi jana.
> *The shoes **were polished** yesterday.*

The passive voice forms of verbs are constructed by adding the prefix *-w-*, *-liw-*, or *-lew-* depending on the ending of the verb stem.

Verb stem	Active	Passive
ends in a consonant	pi**k**a chems**h**a se**m**a	pik**w**a chemsh**w**a sem**w**a
ends in *a*, *i*, or *u*	and**a**a kimb**i**a nun**u**a	anda**liw**a kimbi**liw**a nunu**liw**a
ends in *o* or *e*	**o**a ond**o**a pok**e**a	o**lew**a ondo**lew**a poke**lew**a



Zoezi J

Change the following active voice sentences to passive voice.

Mfano: Mama anafua nguo.
Nguo zinafu**liw**a na mama

1. Watoto wanalima shamba.
2. Wanafunzi wanatoa vitabu ndani ya maktaba.
3. Juma alinunua vyakula kutoka soko la Darajani.
4. Aisha alifua nguo za binti yake jana asubuhi.
5. Fundi alitengeneza baisikeli ya Juma.
6. Juma alifungua mlango na kuweka kifunguo chini ya mlango.
7. Muuzaji aliuza nyama ambayo ilikuwa imeharibika.
8. Kaka yangu alilishona shati hili.



Zoezi K

You had dinner at a friend's house last night, and your classmate has asked you to describe what you ate. Use the passive voice to describe how the food was prepared (chopped, boiled, fried, etc.). Be prepared to answer any questions your classmate might have.

Zoezi L

Listen to the following recording from a food channel about East African Cuisine and answer the questions that follow.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Mtangazaji anaandaa chakula gani?
2. Anahitaji viungo gani kuandaa chakula hiki?
3. Je, hatua ya kwanza ya kuandaa chakula hiki ni gani?
4. Je, hatua ya pili ya kuandaa chakula hiki ni gani?
5. Je, hatua ya mwisho ya kuandaa chakula hiki ni gani?

Cultural Explorations



While both Kenya and Tanzania are majority Christian countries, both have sizable Muslim populations. The introduction of Islam grew out of trade with the Middle East and India that started around the ninth century. Those relationships led to cultural cross-fertilization as the new arrivals assimilated and those among the local population converted to Islam. Approximately 11% of Kenya's population and approximately a third of Tanzania's population are Muslim, with the majority still living along the Swahili coast where the early Indian Ocean trade was concentrated. The population of Zanzibar, for example, is almost exclusively Muslim.



This trade brought an obvious influence on foodways in the region, including a heavy reliance on aromatic spices mentioned earlier in this unit. Muslims in East Africa, like Muslims around the world, also have specific religious beliefs that inform their approach to food. Islam prescribes a set of dietary laws that its believers must follow, making a distinction between food that is allowed (*halal*) and food that is forbidden (*haram*). There are strict prohibitions against the consumption of pork and alcohol, but most other food is permitted as long as its production is in accordance with Islamic law. This is most important with regard to the consumption of meat, which must be from animals that are herbivorous. Animals used for food must be raised in a clean and healthy environment and treated with respect during their lives and also during slaughter to be considered *halal*; the slaughter of animals is a prescribed practice that includes the recitation of a prayer that recognizes the animal as a valuable gift from Allah. Food that is *halal*, including manufactured goods that often include additives, is usually labeled as such so that Muslims can avoid inadvertently eating food that is *haram*.

Food, or rather the lack thereof, is also tied into the religious practice of Muslims during the holy month of Ramadan. During this month, all healthy Muslims are required to abstain from food and drink from dawn until dusk. The day usually begins with a pre-dawn meal known as *suhur* and concludes with *iftar*, a meal to break the fast after sundown. Ramadan is a time of focused spiritual reflection and prayer that helps Muslims to practice self-control and to focus on empathy and acts of charity.

Cultural Reflections

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Foodways are the eating habits of a particular people or region. What are the influences on the foodways in your country? Do they differ by region? How did they arise?
2. Are there people in your community who have specific dietary restrictions or preferences because of religious or other personal beliefs? How does this specific diet impact their daily lives, especially when attempting to eat outside of their own home?
3. Are there particular holidays in your culture that are marked by specific food or drink? How do these holidays and the food practices inform the wider culture?



Zoezi M

You are an assistant in the study abroad office at your institution and have been asked to help prepare a group for a three-month study abroad trip. Your supervisor has asked you to take part in a panel about East African food and to speak briefly about an assigned topic (preparation of dishes, eating norms, market and buying practices, etc.) and then to participate in a discussion session.

Key Vocabulary

Adjectives

-funga close; fast
-kavu dry
-kienyeji local; indigenous
kolea well-seasoned

Adverbs

kando aside; along
kwa utaratibu in order
takriban approximately; nearly
ukiambatanisha together with

Conjunctions

ikiwa if

Nouns

bakuli bowl
bizari turmeric; curry powder
dhahabu gold
giligilani coriander seed
hatua step
kijiko spoon; teaspoon
kisu knife
kikombe cup
kinu mortar; food mill
kitita bunch
kitunguu maji bulb onion
kiwango amount
lavani vanilla
maelekezo directions; instructions
mafanikio success
magadi baking soda
moto fire; heat
msaada aid; help
pati/karamu party
punje piece
sahani plate
sikukuu holiday
sherehe celebration
sufuria pot; pan
taulo za karatasi paper towels
tawi branch, stem
ubao wa kukatakata cutting board
uma fork
utaratibu process
vitunguu maji bulb onions
vitunguu thomu red onions
zabibu kavu raisins (dried grapes)

Verbs

-acha to leave; to abandon
-alika to invite
-angalia to watch; to observe
-biringisha to roll
-chambua to clean; to sort
-changanya; -changika to be mixed
-chunga to strain; to sift
-funika to cover
-gawa to divide
-geuka to change; to be transformed
-hakikisha to make sure; to ensure
-hudhuria to attend
-kaanga to fry
-katakata to chop; to cut into small pieces
-kausha to dry
-koroga to mix; to stir
-loweka to soak
-menya to peel; to strip away
-mimina to drizzle
-oka to bake
-ondoa to remove
-ongeza to add
-pakua to serve
-pasua to break (to crack eggs)
-pindua to turn over; to flip over
-ruka to skip; to jump
-safisha to clean
-songa to knead ugali with a spoon
-tia to pour out
-toa to give; to offer
-tokosa to boil
-washa to ignite; to turn on
-yeyusha to melt

Key Phrases

kiasi ukipendacho as much as you like
Ninamshukuru mungu. I give thanks to God.

Sources

5.1 Vyakula

- “Red Tea” by Jubair1985 is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Red_Tea.jpg
- “Glass of milk” by Santeri Viinamäki is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Glass_of_milk.jpg#/media/File:Glass_of_milk.jpg
- “A glass of water by [cipher] is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022. https://flickr.com/photos/h4ck/3221986177
- “A small cup of coffee” by Julius Schorzman is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:A_small_cup_of_coffee.JPG#/media/File:A_small_cup_of_coffee.JPG
- “Beer Actor” by Alan Levine is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022. https://flickr.com/photos/cogdog/21127813750
- “A glass of red wine” by Davide Restivo is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:A_glass_of_red_wine.jpg
- “Nectar of the Gods” by Cliff Johnson is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/cliff_77/5262171843
- “A glass of fresh orange juice with oranges” by Marco Verch is licensed under CC BY 2.0/ Last accessed 3/10/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/30478819@N08/31617293018
- “Mandazi” by Paresh Jai is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/pareshjai/3738138649/
- “Slices of dark fresh bread with seeds on dark wooden background” by Marco Verch is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/30478819@N08/35453856570/
- “Samosa” by Kalyan is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/35581095@N00/3048032066
- “Uji cup, Pipeline Village, Nairobi” by Eduardo Zárate is licensed under CC BY ND 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/eduardozarate/3513914452
- “Boiled Yam” by DromoTetteh is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 5/27/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:BOILED_YAM.jpg
- “Arrowroot” by unknown author is in the public domain. https://pxhere.com/en/photo/1039607
- “Peanuts” by Daniella Segura are licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/77568040@N08/8483070167
- “Macro Monday – egg” by Kate Ter Haar is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/katerha/32879654000
- “Sausages” by Cristiano Betta is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/cristiano_betta/432845289
- “Pancakes” by Michael Ocampo is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/coolmikeol/5046208238
- “Close-up of fried bacon slices on a white plate” by Marco Verch is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/10/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/30478819@N08/48769264901
- “Daily Breakfast: Fried Potatoes” by Gary Todd is in the public domain. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/101561334@N08/33583531304
- “Cereal” by musicfanatic29 is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/25572801@N00/414939826
- “Blueberry Breakfast Parfait” by Meal Makeover Moms is licensed under CC BY ND 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/mealmakeovermoms/4808689185
- “Quick baked beans” by Scott Veg is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Las accessed 3/24/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/thrivingveg/11458453473
- “Nancy’s Fruit Salad” by John Hrtiz is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/jhritz/135611124

- “Bon big breakfast” by Bob Walker is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Las accessed 3/24/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/rjw1/10493181183
- “Fruit Plate, Croissant & Meusli” by TravelingOtter is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/travelingotter/2691328658
- “Traditional Tanzanian food - pilau kuku, mishkaki, ndizi, &c” by Tcg111 is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Traditional_Tanzanian_food_-_pilau_kuku,_mishkaki,_ndizi,_%26c..JPG
- “Lake Tilapia, Ugali, Sukuma Wiki” by Mark Souther is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/132166227@N05/32030388823
- “Tanzania food- Ugali na kuku wa kienyeji wa kuchoma” by Fredrick Mboma is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tanzania_food_-_Ugali_na_kuku_wa_kienyeji_wa_kuchoma.jpg
- “Pilau, beans & chapati” by Teddykip is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Pilau,_beans_%26_chapati.jpg
- “Njahi, Nduma, Chapati, Kachumbari, chicken - an average Kikuyu party mix” by Shiku Ngigi is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 3/24/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Njahi,_Nduma,_Chapati,_Kachumbari,_chicken_-_an_average_Kikuyu_party_mix.JPG
- Text for Zoezi W is an expansion of materials presented in “Aina 7 ya vyakula vya kienyeji vitavyokuacha ukilamba vidole” by Sophia Mwangangi. Last accessed 5/27/2022. https://radiojambo.co.ke/habari/2019-05-31-aina-7-ya-vyakula-vya-kienyeji-vitavyokuacha-ukilamba-vidole/

5.2. Kwenda mkahawani

- “Bolt Food Delivery” by Brenda Wawire is licensed under CC BY NC.

5.3 Kununua vyakula sokoni

- “Arusha, market” by Deborah is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 5/27/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/deborah_s_perspective/42815143502
- “Kale-Bundle” by Evan Amos is licensed under CC0 1.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kale-Bundle.jpg
- “Red Pepper” by George Hodan is licensed under CC0 1.0. Last accessed 04/17/2023. https://www.publicdomainpictures.net/en/view-image.php?image=183312&picture=red-pepper
- “Cabbage” by Tristan Scmurr is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022/ https://www.flickr.com/photos/kewl/6471030841
- “Cogombre llarg holandès (fruit)” by MacConkey is licensed under CC BY-SA 4.0. Last accessed 04/17/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cogombre_llarg_holand%C3%A8s_(fruit).png
- “3 x Small eggplant 2017 A2” by Fructibus is licensed under CC0 1.0. Last accessed 04/17/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:3_x_Small_eggplant_2017_A2.jpg
- “Cilantro” by Stacy Spensley is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/notahipster/4548900102
- “Fresh Broccoli” by Liz West is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/calliope/7572101152
- “Mushrooms Fungi Nature” by flutie8211 via Pixabay is licensed under CC0. Last accessed 04/17/2023. https://pixabay.com/illustrations/mushrooms-fungi-nature-organic-7706327/
- “Green beans” by Gavin Mahalo is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/144095318@N08/26920896373
- “3 types of lentil” by Justinc is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:3_types_of_lentil.jpg
- “Peas” by Gavin Firkser is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/g_firkser/6129298145
- “Bean market 11” by CIAT/Neil Palmer is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed

6/7/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/ciat/4105131313

- "Rice" by WayTru is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 8/1/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/waytru/548571403
- "Flour and wheat in wooden bowls on darkk background" by Marco Verch is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/30478819@N08/50867817003
- "Africa Food Security 12" by Kate Holt / Africa Practice is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Africa_Food_Security_12_(1066503590 5).jpg
- "Sorghum at the market" by Natnael Tadele is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sorghum_at_the_market.JPG
- "Millet 01" by Amuzujoe is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Millet_01.jpg
- "Cinnamon by Kjokkenustyr Net is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/146966953@N02/37641954626
- "Various kinds of pepper next to a wooden pepper grinder on black background" by Ivan Radic is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/6/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/26344495@N05/51180210245
- "Cumin spice" by unknown author is licensed under CC BY SA 1/0. Last accessed 6/7/2022. Modifications to original made by Jonathan Perkins. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cumin-spice.jpg
- "Ginger Rhizome" by Malcom Koo is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ginger_rhizome.jpg#/media/File:Ginger_rhizome.jpg
- "[Nutmeg]" by Herusutimbul is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Biji_Pala_Bubuk.jpg#/media/File:Biji_Pala_Bubuk.jpg
- "Cloves" by Jorge Barrios is in the public domain. Last accessed 6/7/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cloves.JPG#/media/File:Cloves.JPG
- "Saffron salonik" by Salonik Saffron is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 6/7/2022/ https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Saffron_salonik.jpg#/media/File:Saffron_salonik.jpg
- "Turmeric" by Molly Via is in the public domain. Last accessed 6/7/2022/. https://www.flickr.com/photos/141669340@N08/43687036642
- "Ndizi na kitimoto cha kukaanga" by Frederick Mboma is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tanzania_food_-_Ndizi_na_kitimoto_cha_kukaanga.jpg
- "Orange Fruit Pieces" by Evan-Amos is licensed under CC BY SA 3.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Orange-Fruit-Pieces.jpg#/media/File:Orange-Fruit-Pieces.jpg
- "Mangoes" by spurekar is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/spurekar/5761392337
- "Lemon" by André Karwath is licensed under CC BY SA 2.5. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Lemon.jpg
- "Pineapple" by Kyle McDonald is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/kylemcdonald/3443116234
- "Avocado" by Chad Miller is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/chadmiller/69170988
- "Watermelon" by Sam Valadi is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/132084522@N05/16963246821
- "Grapes" by Tara Schmidt is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/taramarie/1434666718
- "Sliced Tomatoes" by Alabama Extension is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/184594136@N08/50408999768/
- "Garden Strawberries in Germany" by Leoi Johannes is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Garden_Strawberries_in_Germany_-_edited.jpg

- “Olives” by CeresB is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/37054091@N06/5622055101
- “Dates” by Daniel R. Blume is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/drb62/990802343
- “Fuji Apple” by Scott Bauer USDA ARS is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/17/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Fuji_apple.jpg
- Screen capture from *Zanzibar: Spices, Slaves and the Spirit of Independence – Street Food* by Al Jazaeera English. All rights reserved. Last accessed 6/7/2022/. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=nQobCj1kUuM
- Screen capture from *Spent 24 Hours in Stonetown, Zanzibar | Street Food* by Tayo Aina. All rights reserved. Last accessed 6/7/2022/. https://youtu.be/LG_qM-Zp7ww
- Screen capture from *The Best Zanzibar Street Food at Forodhani Night Food Market in Stonetown* by Alex Tackie. All rights reserved. Last accessed 6/7/2022. https://youtu.be/y6lZ1gcb-Ss
- “Kariakoo Street Markets” by Scott Edmunds is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/30557460@N05/46905618885
- “M-PESA mobile money and Equity agent, Nairobi, Kenya” by Fiona Graham / WorldRemit is licensed under CC BY SA 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022. Cropped by Jonathan Perkins. https://www.flickr.com/photos/worldremit/30302946185

5.4 Kuandaa vyakula

- “Cleaning Veggies in Running Water” by Tracy Nicholls. CSIRO is licensed under CC BY 3.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:CSIRO_ScienceImage_2709_Cleaning_Vegies_in_Running_Water.jpg
- “IMG_3368-ps” [chopping onions] by Allison Matherly is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/allison-a-ralston/5928650588
- “Flour” by Melissa Wiese is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/42dreams/2452861482
- “Hand pouring milk to cup of coffee. Café background” by Marco Verch is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Las accessed 6/10/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/30478819@N08/43075125582
- “Flower Cupcake Recipe” by Jamie is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/jamiesrabbits/5791396338
- “Grilled meat and smoke” by DeusXFlorida is licensed under CCBY 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/8363028@N08/4622842631
- “Boiling Eggs” by Alabama Extension is in the public domain. Last accessed 6/10/2022. https://www.flickr.com/photos/alabama_extension/50994372611
- “Banana fry in hot oil golden” by Irvin Calicut is licensed under CC BY SA 3.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Banana_fry_in_hot_oil_golden.JPG#/media/File:Banana_fry_in_hot_oil_golden.JPG
- “Four siemens” [pizza in oven] by Thomas van de Weerd is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 6/10/2022.
- “Swahili coast” by Runehelmet is licensed under CC BY SA 3.0 Unported. Last accessed 6/10/22. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Swahili_coast.png
- “Seal of Kanya Bureau of Halal Certification”. All rights reserved. Last accessed 6/10/22. https://www.kbhc.info/

6. Afya na hali ya maisha

Health and Living Conditions

Essential Questions:

1. How do cultural practices around health and ailments in your culture differ from those of other cultures that you know?
2. What customs and practices does your culture have with regard to treating the sick and those with health conditions?
3. What are the common practices around clothing in your culture? How are they different from other cultures?
4. What are some common or traditional celebrations in your culture and what are their significance? How do the traditions and celebrations for these occasions differ from those of other cultures?

Stage One:

By the end of this unit, students should be able to:

- describe symptoms of an ailment (Presentational);
- ask and answer general questions about health and well-being in both casual conversation and more formal medical contexts (Interpersonal);
- compare and contrast cultural practices around illness in East Africa to those in their own culture, including the provision of medical care (Interpretive);
- discuss clothing appropriate for different occasions (casual, semi-formal, formal, business, or official purposes) as well as personal clothing preferences (Interpersonal);
- interact with sales staff with regard to buying clothing and souvenirs (Interpersonal);
- provide general descriptions of a person with regard to physical appearance, height, weight, and manner of dress (Presentational);
- ask and answer questions about the weather including comparisons about folk beliefs surrounding weather prediction (Interpersonal, Interpretive);
- compare and contrast weather patterns and seasons in your own culture with those of East Africa (Interpretive);
- discuss celebrations in East Africa as compared to your own culture, especially with regard to clothing, food and expectations with regard to behavior (Interpersonal, Interpretive).

Stage Two:

What will be acceptable evidence of the student's knowledge and ability?

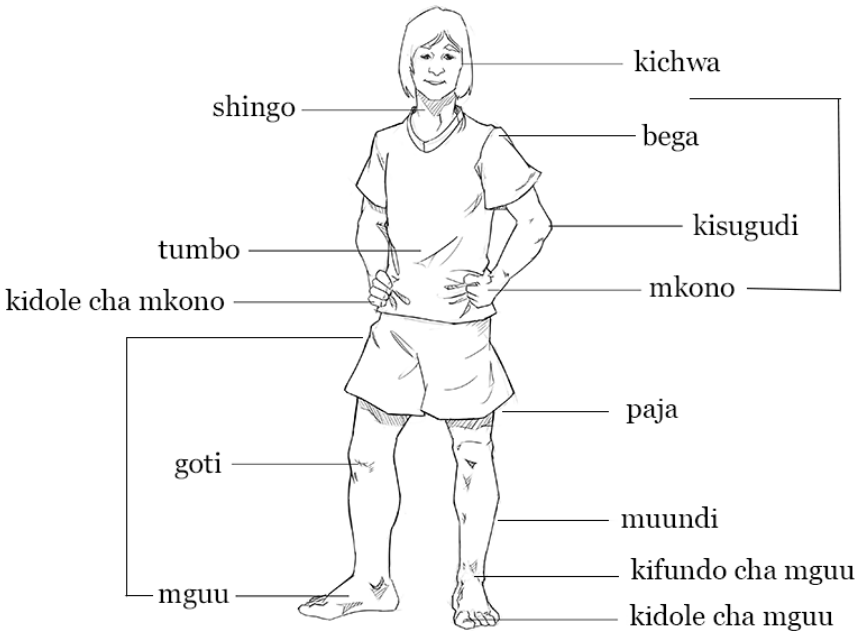
INTERPRETIVE TASKS	INTERPERSONAL TASKS	PRESENTATIONAL TASKS
Students will read a text about common tropical ailments and identify the cause, symptoms, and treatment. Students will watch videos of weather forecasts in East Africa and write a summary of the main ideas from the forecast announcements. Students will read newspaper articles about clothing in East Africa and respond to questions. Students will read or listen to an advertisement (health care product or clothing items) and write a summary of the main ideas.	Students will exchange information about their clothing preferences during different weather conditions and seasons. Students will exchange information about a health condition of themselves or another person. Students will role play a visit to the doctor's office where they will exchange information about their condition with the nurse and also visit other offices in the hospital as directed (the laboratory, specific clinics, and pharmacy) and engage in conversations with the hospital staff.	Students will present a poster about the different seasons and climatic conditions of their contexts. They will include information about duration, common activities, weather conditions during the different seasons. Students will make a cultural presentation about an East African cultural celebration. They will include information about the cultural significance of the celebration, activities, food and drinks served, clothing, among others. Students will write blog posts to share with others information about their cultural experiences in East Africa i.e. cultural celebrations.

Stage Three:

What activities will students participate in to prepare them to demonstrate what they know and can do?

6.1 Afya na Magonjwa

Zoezi A



Joseph is sore after getting hurt playing soccer. When he comes to the living room, he tells Farida about his aches and pains. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Farida: Uko sawa Joseph? Mbona unachechemea ukitembea?

Joseph: Bi. Farida nilianguka nilipokuwa nikicheza leo asubuhi kwenye mashindano baina ya timu ya Chuo Kikuu cha Dar es Salaam na Chuo Kikuu cha Kenyatta.

Farida: Pole sana Joseph. Una maumivu gani?

Joseph: Goti langu linauma pia kifundo cha mguu kimechubuka na kina vuja damu.

Farida: Je, ni goti la kushoto au la kulia linalouma?

Joseph: Nimeumia sehemu ya mguu wa kulia na pia bega la kulia. Nilipata huduma ya kwanza uwanjani lakini bado ninahisi uchungu sana.

Farida: Pole sana kwa maumivu. Ninaona ngozi yako imechubuka sana. Ninatumai kuwa mshipa wako haujaumia. Pumzika kidogo ili maumivu yako yapungue. Shika hii barafu utie kwenye goti lako lenye maumivu. Je, bega pia limeumia?.

Joseph: Ndiyo, bega langu pia limeumia kwa sababu ya kuanguka chini.

Farida: Pole sana. Ingia ndani ya nyumba ili upumzike.Pia meza dawa hizi za kupunguza uchungu. Iwapo maumivu yatazidi tutaenda kumwona daktari.

Joseph: Sawa. Ninashukuru.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Je, Joseph ana maumivu katika sehemu gani za mwili?
2. Je, mechi ambayo Joseph, alikuwa akicheza ilikuwa baina ya timu gani?
3. Je, Joseph ameumia upande gani wa mwili?
4. Je, Joseph aliumia alipokuwa akifanya nini?
5. Je, mama amemshauri Joseph kufanyanini?

Zoezi B

Joseph is not feeling any better the next day and decides to visit the pharmacist with his friend Matata. He then runs into Shamila and tells her about the injury. Read the two conversations and answer the questions that follow.



Mfamasia: Hujambo? Nikusaidiaje?

Joseph: Sijambo, lakini mimi ni mgonjwa kidogo. Nilipata jeraha uwanjani siku ya jumamosi nilipokuwa nikicheza mechi ya kandanda na nina maumivivu mengisana.

Mfamasia: Pole sana Joseph kwa jeraha lako. Ninaona unachechemea. Unahisi vipi?

Joseph: Ninaumwa na mguu na bega upande wa kulia. Ninaumwa pia na shingo na kichwa .

Mfamasia: Pole sana. Umekunywa dawa zingine zozote?

Joseph: Nilipoanguka nilipata huduma ya kwanza uwanjani. Muuguzi alinikagua akabaini kuwa mishipa ya bega na mguu haijaathirika. Nilipata ibuprofeni na nimezikunywa kwa siku mbili sasa lakini bado nina maumivu.

Mfamasia: Ibuprofeni miongoni mwa dawa zingine za parasetamo ni muhimu sana kwa kupunguza maumivu na vilevile hupunguza uvimbe unaotekea mwilini baada ya jeraha. Nitakupatia Naproxen kwa kuwa ni dawa ya kupunguza maumivu ambayo huondoa uvimbe na ugumu wa viungo. Nina uhakika utapata nafuu baada ya kuitumia. Utalipa shilingi elfu kumi na saba na mia moja na kumi. Au una bima ya afya?

Joseph: Sina bima ya afya. Je, nitatumia dawa hii kwa muda gani?

Mfamasia: Utahitaji kunywa vidonge viwili mara mbili kwa siku kwa muda wa wiki moja. Maumivu yakizidi unapaswa kwenda kwa hospitali. Daktari anaweza kukushauri utumie vidonge vya co-codamol kwa kuwa vina uwezo mkubwa zaidi wa kupunguza mauvimu makali. Asante, na nakutakia afueni.

Joseph: Asante sana. Ninashukuru kwa ushauri wako.

Joseph anachukua dawa na anapotoka kwenye duka la dawa anakutana na Shamila akitoka matembezi. Wanazungumza kwa muda mfupi

Shamila: Uhali gani Joseph?

Joseph: Niliumia kwenye goti langu. Na kwa siku mbili sijaweza kupindua shingo langu wala kuweza kutembea vizuri.

Shamila: Unahitaji kupumzika kwa sababu ninafikiri hujaweza kulala vizuri. Unakaa mchovu sana. Tafadhali nipigie simu iwapo utahitaji msaada wowote. Nitamjulisha mwalimu Bakari kuwa hutaweza kuhudhuria darasa la Kiswahili kesho kwa sababu wewe ni mgonjwa.

Joseph: Sawa. Ninashukuru. Nitakupigia simu baadaye. Ninakutakia mchana mwema.

Shamila: Kuwa na mchana mwema pia.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo

1. Joseph anaumwa kwenye sehemu gani za mwili?
2. Nini chanzo cha maumivu ya Joseph?
3. Joseph amepata matibabu gani?
4. Mfamasia amempatia Joseph dawa gani?
5. Dawa ambayo amepewa Joseph itamsaidiaje ?
6. Iwapo maumivu yatazidi, Mfamasia anamshauri Joseph kufanya nini?
7. Je, Joseph ataweza kuhudhuria darasa lake la Kiswahili?



Zoezi C

Provide the plurals for the body parts given below.

1. kichwa
2. shingo
3. bega
4. kifua
5. mgongo
6. tumbo
7. mkono
8. kisugudi
9. kidole cha mkono
10. nyonga
11. mguu
12. goti
13. kifundo cha mguu
14. kidole cha mguu



Zoezi D

Pretend that everyone in the class is suffering from random aches and pains. One student should touch the part of their body that hurts, name it and express the degree of pain that they are experiencing. The next student should describe the ailment the first person has and then describe their own ailment. The next student describes the first two students' ailments before describing their own. Continue until each student in the class has spoken. Pay careful attention to the class of the noun being used.

Mifano:

Jicho langu linauma.

Mguu wa Juma wa kulia unauma.

Kifua cha Amina kinauma.

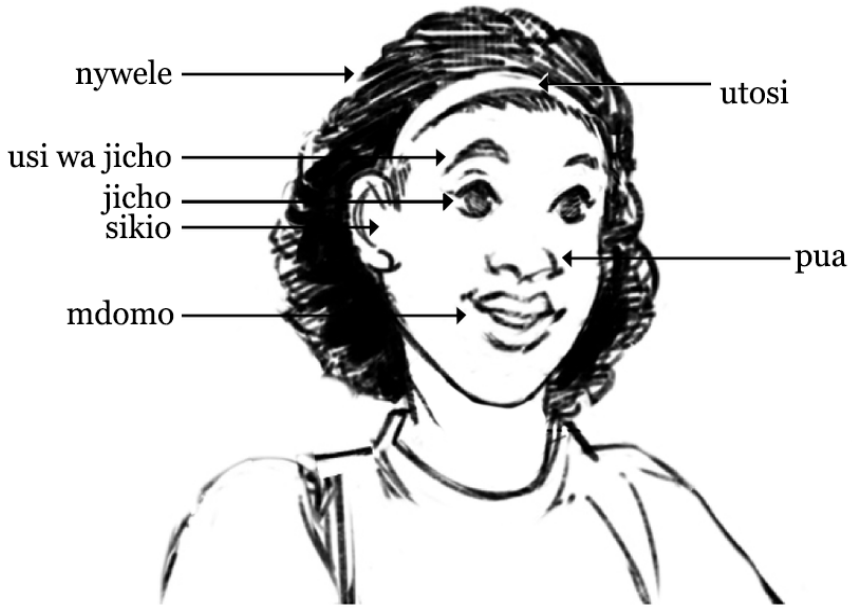


Zoezi E

Write a report of the injuries that were described in the previous activity. If you have forgotten any of the details, you will need to ask your classmates to refresh your memory.

Sarufi: The U- Noun Classes

You saw a large number of nouns beginning in *u-* at the beginning of the book when we learned the names of countries (Uingereza, Ufaransa, Usomali, Uhindi). There are also a large number of nouns in this class that have to do with various parts of the human body, including the face (*uso*) and crown of the head (*utosi*).



These fall into a few categories with regard to how their plurals are formed:

- plurals in ***ny-***, which include *uso* (face) and *usi wa jicho* (eyebrow), as well as *uzi* (thread), *ua* (courtyard) and *uma* (fork)
- plurals in ***nd-***, which include *ulimi* (tongue) and *udevu* (beard)
- plurals in ***mb-***, which include *ubavu* (rib) and *ubawa* (wing)
- plurals created by **removing the *u-*** at the beginning of the word, which include *unywele* (a single strand of hair), *utumbo* (intestines), *unyayo* (soles of the feet), as well as *ufunguo* (key) and *ukuta* (wall)

The u- noun classes also include **nouns that exist only in the singular**. You have already seen a few examples of this in the words *ugali*, *unga*, and *uji*. Other words of this type include:

- *umeme* (electricity)
- *ujamaa* (community)
- *umaskini* (poverty)
- *uwizi* (theft)
- *upendo* (love)
- *utosi (crown of head)*

The noun marker for all U- class nouns is *-u/-zi:*

Uso wake **u**meharibika.
His/her face is all broken out.

Nyuso zao **zi**meharibika.
Their faces are all broken out.

Ukuta mrefu **u**mevunjika.
The tall wall has cracked.

Kuta ndefu **zi**mevunjika.
The tall walls have cracked.

Adjectives modifying *u*-class nouns take *m-* in the singular and *n-* in the plural with some notable exceptions. Those include *mbaya* for both singular and plural and a few that take no ending in the plural (*mkubwa*/*kubwa*, *mfupi*/*fupi*, *mpana*/*pana* among others). The singular *mrefu* becomes *ndefu* in the plural.

The U-Class nouns take -u-for singular (*huu*-this, *ule*-that), and -zi for plural (*hizi*-these) when forming demonstratives

The U-noun class also includes the names of countries like Uingereza (England), Ufaransa (France), Uhispania (Spain), Uturuki (Turkey) that were discussed in the introductory units.



Zoezi F

Provide the plurals for the body parts given below. Note that not all of them are from the *u-* noun classes.

1. unywele
2. pua
3. jicho
4. ubayu
5. utosi
6. mguu
7. shingo
8. sikio
9. usi wa jicho
10. unyayo
11. midomo

Zoezi G

Convert all of the nouns in the following sentences from singular to plural (or vice versa). Pay careful attention to the agreement of adjectives and verbs.

1. Ulimi unauma kuliko meno
2. Ubavu wa mwanafunzi umevunjika
3. Uso wa mtoto ni mwororo
4. Ufunguo wake umepotea
5. Ugali umepikwa
6. Upendo wao umetambulika
7. Ndevu zake ni refu
8. Mbao za nyumba zimefika
9. Kuta ndefu zimepakwa rangi
10. Kurasa za vitabu zimechafuka

Zoezi H

After going out the night before with friends, Shamila wakes up with stomach problems. She knocks at the door of her host mother to get some help. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Shamila: Shikamoo mama. Habari za asubuhi?

Farida: Marahaba Shamila. U hali gani? Mbona umeamka mapema hivi? Je, ulilala vizuri?

Shamila: Nzuri mama, lakini mimi ni mgonjwa kidogo. Sikulala usiku mzima.

Farida: Alaa! Pole sana. Unahisi maumivu gani?

Shamila: Tumbo langu linauma sana.

Farida: Pole sana, tumbo lilianza kuuma lini?

Shamila: Tumbo lilianza kuniuma baada ya chakula cha jioni jana. Nina Maumivu makali sana. Sijaweza kupata hata lepe la usingizi.

Farida: Pole sana Shamila. Je, unafikiri ni kwa sababu ya chakula ulichokila jana jioni?

Shamila: Sina uhakika, kwa sababu nilikula vyakula ambavyo mimi hula kila mara. Nilikula wali kwa maharage na kabeji. Lakini chakula cha mchana nilikula mkahawani. Sijawahi kwenda tena kwa mkahawa huo.

Farida: Pole sana. Mbali na maumivu makali je una dalili zingine za ugonjwa?

Shamila: Mbali na maumivu ninahisi kichefuchefu sana. Nilitapika kidogo. Sina hamu ya chakula pia. Ningependa kwenda hospitalini ili nipate matibabu.

Farida: Bila shaka ni muhimu twende hospitalini ili umwone daktari. Ungependa kunywa maji au chai kabla ya kwenda hospitalini ?

Shamila: Sina hamu ya kula wala kunywa maji. Nitabeba chupa ya maji.

Farida: Sawa sawa. Wacha nijitayarishe. Jitayarishe pia ili tuondoke hivi punde.

Shamila: Sawa mama. Nitakuwa tayari baada ya dakika kumi.

Farida: Ninakutakia afueni. Mimi pia nitakuwa tayari baada ya dakika kumi. Hakikisha umebeba kitambulisho na bima yako ya afya.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila ana maumivu gani?
2. Je, Shamila aliweza kulala usiku wa kuamkia asubuhi hii? Kwa nini?
3. Shamila ana dalili gani zingine za ugonjwa?
4. Shamila amefanya maamzi gani ili kupata usaidizi?
5. Farida alimkumbusha Shamila kubeba stakabadhi gani?

Zoezi I

Your friend has been unwell but has not gone to see the doctor. Find out how they are feeling and offer to help out as needed.

Zoezi J

Shamila and Farida seek medical attention at Tabata Seregea hospital in their neighborhood. Read Shamila's conversation with the hospital receptionist and answer the questions that follow.

Mpokezi: Habari gani dada? Nikusaidiaje?

Shamila: Nzuri lakini mimi ni mgonjwa kidogo.

Mpokezi: Pole sana. Nitakusadia ili umwone daktari kwa haraka. Ningependa unipe maelezo yako kwa kifupi.

Shamila: Sawa.

Mpokezi: Unaitwa nani? Una umri wa miaka mingapi?

Shamila: Jina langu ni Shamila Jones. Nina umri wa miaka ishirini na miwili.

Mpokezi: Unaishi wapi au anwani yako ni gani?

Shamila: Ninaishi katika mtaa wa Sarakasi nyumba nambari kumi na tatu.

Mpokezi: Je, umesafiri nje ya Dar es Salaam kwenye wiki mbili zilizopita?-

Shamila: Hapana sijasafiri nje ya Dar es Salaam wiki mbili zilizopita.

Mpokezi: Ningependa ujaze fomu hii, kisha nitaingiza maelezo yako kwenye mfumo wa hospitali.

(*The receptionist hands the form to Shamila.)*

Shamila: Sawa.

Mpokezi: Je, una bima ya afya?

Shamila: Ndiyo nina bima ya afya ya kampuni ya Jubilee.

Mpokezi: Tafadhali, nipe kadi yako ya bima ya afya.

(Shamila hands over her insurance card and continues to fill the form. After she has finished, she hands it back to the receptionist.)

Shamila: Hii hapa fomu ambayo nimemaliza kujaza.

Mpokezi: Sawa. Tafadhali tia sahihi hapa. Kisha uketi pale usubiri kumwona daktari.

Shamila: Sawa. Ninashukuru.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Je, Shamila alikuwa na bima ya afya?
2. Je, Shamila alisafiri nje ya mji wa Dar es Salaam kwenye wiki mbili zilizopita?
3. Shamila alienda kutafuta matibabu katika hospitali gani?
4. Baada ya kujaza fomu, Shamila alifanya nini?
5. Shamila aniashi wapi?
6. Shamila ana umri gani?



Zoezi K

You are at a local hospital in Dar es Salaam during your study abroad stay. You are required to fill the insurance medical claim form below before you can see the doctor.

IN-PATIENT

CLAIM FORM

Sehemu I - Kukamilishwa na mgonjwa/mwanachama

Jina kamili la mgonjwa	
Nambari ya uanachama	
Nambari ya simu	
Nambari ya kitambulisho.	
Tarehe ya kuzaliwa	
Jina la mwanachama (ikiwa mgonjwa ni mtegemezi)	
Jina la mwajiri wa mwanachama	
Ugonjwa wa sasa ulianza lini?	
Umewahi kuugua ugonjwa huu siku za nyuma?	ndio/ hapana
Kama ndiyo , ulianza kuugua lini na umeugua mara ngapi?	

Zoezi L

You need to go to the local clinic because you are feeling sick. The administrator asks you for your personal information before you can see the clinical officer for consultation. Working with a partner, role play the conversation with the clinic administrator. Ask at least seven questions. If you finish early, reverse roles with your partner.

Zoezi M

Shamila is called to a room with a nurse who takes her temperature (*joto*) and checks her blood pressure (*shinikizo la damu*) and asks a few questions about how she is feeling. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Nesi: Habari za mchana?

Shamila: Nzuri kidogo. Uko salama? Habari za kazi?

Nesi: Niko salama. Kazi inaendelea vizuri sana. Ningependa kukufanyia vipimo vichache. Kwanza nitakupima joto hapa kwa kipaji.

(The nurse takes Shamila's temperature on her forehead.)

Nesi: Joto lako ni nyuzi mia moja na nne . Una joto kali. Sasa nitapima shinikizo lako la damu. Tafadhali nyosha mkono wako wa kulia.

(Shamila stretches her right hand towards the nurse.)

Nesi: Shinikizo lako la damu liko sawa lina vipimo vya kawaida . Je, unahisi vipi? Nyosha kidole cha mkono wa kulia nipime pigo la moyo. Ninaona pigo lako la moyo liko sawa.

(The nurse records the vitals on a form.)

Nesi: Unahisi vipi?

Shamila: Nina maumivu makali sana kwenye tumbo langu. Pia ninahisi kichefuchefu na sina hamu ya chakula.

Nesi: Maumivu ya tumbo yalianza lini?

Shamila: Maumivu yalianza jana usiku mwendo wa saa mbili za usiku.

Nesi: Je, ulikula kitu chochote cha kigeni?

Shamila: Nilikula chakula cha kawaida, lakini mchana nilikula kwa mkahawa mgeni. Nilikula saladi, nyama ya nguruwe, chapati na mchuzi wa maharage.

Nesi: Umesema unahisi kichefuchefu pia? Je umetapika?

Shamila: Ndiyo, nilitapika mara mbili usiku.

Nesi: Je unaendesha?

Shamila: Hapana.

Nesi: Kutoka moja hadi kumi maumivu yako ni kiwango kipi?

Shamila: Maumivu yangu yako kwenye kiwango chasaba.

Nesi: Nitakupa dawa za kupunguza joto sasa kisha utasubiri kumwona daktari. Meza hizi tembe mbili. Maji ndiyo haya.

(The nurse hands Shamila a glass of water.)

Shamila: Sawa.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Nesi alimfanyia Shamila vipimo gani?
2. Shamila ana joto kiasi gani?
3. Shamila alikula chakula kipi mkahawani?
4. Nesi, amempa Shamila dawa gani?
5. Shamila alianza kuhisi maumivu mwendo was aa ngapi?
6. Shamila ana dalili gani?



Zoezi N

You have gone to a local hospital for treatment because you have been feeling unwell for the last few days. After completing the insurance paperwork, the nurse checks your vital signs and discusses your symptoms. Take turns with a classmate with each person playing the nurse and asking at least five questions.



Zoezi O

Shamila is called into the doctor's room. She speaks to the doctor about feeling dizzy (*kizunguzungu*) and is given an injection (*sindano*) after her test results come back. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Daktari: Vipi Shamila? Unahisi vipi?

Shamila: Salama. Nina maumivu makali sana kwenye tumbo langu tangu jana usiku. Pia nilitapika mara mbili, nina joto, ninahisi kichefuchefu sana, ninatoa jasho jingi, ninahisi uchovu, na sina hamu ya chakula wala kinywaji chochote

Daktari: Umekuwa na maumivu haya kwa muda gani?

Shamila: Nilianza kuumwa jana usiku. Maumivu hayajapoa hata kidogo.

Daktari: Je, unaumwa na kichwa?

Shamila: Hapana sina maumivu ya kichwani.

Daktari: Nitakutuma kwa maabara ili ufanyiwe vipimo ambavyo vitatusaidia kubaini pahali penye shida kwenye mwili wako. Ningependa upeleke karatasi hii kwa maabara. Itachukua dakika ishirini kwa vipimo vyote kukamilika. Baada ya kupokea majibu ningependa urejee kwenye ofisi hii.

(*After 20 minutes.)*

Shamila: Nimeelezewa kuwa vipimo vyangu vimetumwa kwako kupitia mtandao.

Daktari: Ndiyo nimevipokea vipimo vyako. Kutokana na dalili ambazo umenieleza vipimo vinadhibitisha kuwa una ugua homa ya matumbo. Baadhi ya dalili za homa ya matumbo ni uchovu, kuumwa na kichwa na tumbo, na kukosa hamu ya chakula.

Shamila: Alaa! Chanzo cha homa ya matumbo ni nini?

Daktari: Maambukizi ya Homa ya Matumbo hutokana na kunywa maji machafu au chakula kilicho athirika kwa uchafu.

Shamila: Je, huenda chakula au maji niliyokunywa mkahawani hayakuwa safi?

Daktari: Labda. Nitakudunga sindano, kisha nitakupa dawa za kumeza. Nesi atakudunga sindano. Utatumia dawa hizi kwa muda wa wiki mbili. Maumivu yakizidi baada ya siku nne ningependa urejee hospitalini. Je, kabla ya safari yako, ulipokea chanjo dhidi ya homa ya matumbo?

Shamila: La, sikupokea chanjo yoyote.

Daktari: Hakuna shida dawa hizi zitakusaidia sana. Hakikisha pia unakunywa maji mengi safi na pia unakula matunda mengi

Shamila: Sawa. Ninashukuru sana.

Jibu maswali

1. Shamila alienda wapi kufanyiwa vipimo vya ugonjwa?
2. Shamila anaugua ugonjwa gani?
3. Nini chanzo cha ugonjwa wa Shamila ?
4. Shamila amepata matibabu gani?
5. Shamila atatumia dawa kwa muda gani?
6. Daktari alimshauri Shamila kufanya nini?
7. Unafikiri chakula alichokula Shamila mkahawani kilikuwa kisafi?
8. Shamila alipokea chanjo ya homa ya matumbo kabla ya safari yake?



Zoezi P

After your preliminary meeting with the nurse, you meet with the doctor to discuss your symptoms. Take turns with a classmate with each person playing the doctor and asking at least five questions.



Zoezi Q

Listen to the radio advertisement. Write a complete word for word transcript of what you hear and be prepared to summarize what you have learned about the product.

Zoezi R

Malaria is quite prevalent in East Africa, causing tens of thousands of deaths a year. Read the passage below and answer the questions that follow.



Malaria ni ugonjwa unaosababishwa na vimelea. Vimelea hawa husambaza ugonjwa huu kupitia kuumwa na umbu aliyeathirika . Watu wanaougua Malaria huhisi joto jingi na hutetemeka mno. Licha ya hayo, ugonjwa huu haupatikani mahali ambapo hali ya hewa ni wastani.Ugonjwa wa Malaria hupatikana katika nchi za kitropiki. Kila mwaka, takriban watu milioni mia mbili tisini huambukizwa na ugonjwa wa Malaria na zaidi ya watu elfu mia nne hufariki kutokana na ugonjwa huu.

Ili kupunguza kusambaa kwa ugonjwa wa Malaria, Shirika la Afya Duniani limeanzisha huduma za kupeana dawa za kuzuia maambuziki ya ugonjwa huu. Vile vile shirika la afya duniani linatoa kwa kiwango kikubwa neti/chandarua zilizotibiwa kuwazuia watu kuumwa na umbu. Shirika la Afya Duniani limependekeza kutolewa kwa chanjo itakayo tumiwa na watoto wanaoishi katika mataifa ambayo yanakumbwa na asilimia kubwa ya ugonjwa wa Malaria.

Neti zilizotibiwa au mavazi na dawa za kuua wadudu zinaweza kusaidia kujikinga au kuzuia maambuziki ya Malaria wakati ambapo mtu anasafiri. Pia kabla ya kusafiri kwenye maeneo ya kitropiki , watu wanahimizwa kutumia dawa za kujikinga na Malaria. Unaweza kumeza dawa kabla ya safari yako na baada ya safari yako au pia unaweza kumeza tembe za kujikinga na Malaria kila siku wakati wa safari yako. Haya yote hutegemea na ushauri wa daktari. Changamoto kuu kwenye vita dhidi ya ugonjwa wa Malaria ni kuwa vimelea hivi vina upinzani mkubwa na dawa ambazo zinatumika kwa matibabu ya ugonjwa huu. Kwa hivyo wanasayansi wana kazi kubwa ya kuendeleza utafiti ili kubaini dawa nzuri za kupigana na vimelea hawa.

DALILI ZA UGONJWA WA MALARIA:

- Joto jingi mwilini
- Kuumwa na kichwa
- Kuhisi kichefuchefu na kutapika
- Kuhara
- Maumivu ya tumbo
- Uchovu
- Kupumua kwa haraka
- Kikohozi
- Baridi kali
- Kukosa hamu ya chakula
- Uchovu
- Maumivu ya misuli
- Mpigo wa haraka wa kifua

CHANZO CHA UGONJWA WA MALARIA:

- Ugonjwa wa Malaria unasababishwa na umbu wa kike na hupitishwa kwa binadamu kupitia kuumwa na umbu huyu.
- Umbu ambaye hajaathirika wakati anapomuuma mtu aliyeathirika na ugonjwa wa Malaria.
- Maambukizi ya vimelea. Ikiwa mbu atakuuma baadaye anaweza kusambaza vimelea vya ugonjwa wa malaria kwako.
- Kwa maini baada tu ya kimelea kuingia mwilini mwako anaenda moja kwa moja hadi kwa maini ambapo baadhi yao huka kwa muda mrefu.
- Kwa njia ya damu. Baada ya vimelea kukoma hutoka kwa maini na kuambukiza seli nyekundu za damu na huu ndio wakati ambapo mtu huambukizwa na Ugonjwa wa Malaria na kuanza kuonyesha dalili za ugonjwa huu.

JINSI YA KUZUIA UGONJWA WA MALARIA

Kama una safari ya kwenda mahali ambapo pana uwezekano mkubwa wa kuambukizwa naugonjwa wa Malaria unapaswa ujizuie na kuumwa na umbu. Umbu hujitokeza sana wakati wa jioni hadi alfariji.

Kwa hivyo ili kuzuia kuumwa na mbu unahitaji:

1. Kufunika ngozi yako kwa kuvaa nguo zenye mikono mirefu.
2. Kujipaka mafuta ya kufukuza umbu kwenye ngozi yako. Baadhi ya mafuta haya ni kama vile DEET, PICARIDIN,IR3535.
3. Kulala ndani ya neti iliyotibiwa.
4. Kupata chanjo. Shirika la Afya Duniani limependekeza kuwa na chanjo dhidi ya ugonjwa wa Malaria itumike kwa watoto ambao wanaishi katika nchi zenye viwango vya juu vya ugonjwa huu.
5.

Jibu maswali.

1. Ugonjwa wa Malaria husababishwa na nini?
2. Ugonjwa wa Malaria hupatikana katika maeneo gani?
3. Maambukizi ya ugonjwa wa Malaria huenea kwa njia gani?
4. Taja dalili tano za kuonyesha kuwa mtu ana maambukizi ya ugonjwa wa Malaria.
5. Eleza njia ambazo Shirika la Afya Duniani linatumia katika jitihada zake za kuzuia kusambaa kwa ugonjwa wa Malaria.
6. Watu wangapi huambukizwa na ugonjwa wa Malaria kila mwaka duniani?
7. Ni mbu wa aina gani ambaye husambaza ugonjwa wa Malaria?
8. Taja njia tatu za kuzuia kusambaa kwa ugonjwa wa Malaria.

Zoezi S

Watch the video *Mbu Wanakuja!* and write down the main ideas in a few sentences. Compare your summary with a partner to see if you agree. Feel free to modify your sentences based upon your discussions.



tinyurl.com/yc8abkdw

Cultural Explorations

East African governments have accelerated the development of health infrastructure in recent decades, and the majority of people have ready access to modern medicine. In Kenya, for example, more than 80% of the population live only 5km from the nearest health facility. Cities and more urban areas have hospitals with modern infrastructure and specialized doctors. In rural areas, however, there are few well-resourced medical facilities, with most people needing to travel tens of kilometers to access even a small medical clinic. Those requiring specialized care may need to travel for hundreds of kilometers to find a modern hospital.

Medical costs are also an obstacle as most people in East Africa do not have health insurance. There are government sponsored health insurance programs and some have private health insurance coverage through their employer, but for many the premiums are simply too high to afford. Most hospitals, as such, require a minimum deposit to be admitted, making it impossible for many to get the health services they need. Sometimes, family, friends and communities are forced to sell property or to organize a fundraiser to pay the required admission fees. Government-run hospitals are often cheaper and have lower costs for admitting patients, but they are often under-resourced and do not have the capacity to meet the high demand.

In view of the financial and logistical obstacles to modern medicine, it should not be surprising that a large portion of the population still depends upon herbal remedies and other forms of traditional medicine. Many East Africans, in fact, have a clear preference for traditional medicine as they believe it to be more effective. Herbalists and traditional healers are both commonly referred to as *Waganga wa Kienyeji*. While herbalists create treatments from herbs and other plants, traditional healers rely on the intervention of divine spirits and perform rituals to treat their patients. Given that traditional healers call upon spirits (usually those of dead ancestors) for assistance, they are publicly shunned by East African Christians who believe their practices to be ungodly; yet these same people who condemn these healers publicly often seek assistance from them discreetly.

Many East Africans believe that herbal cures and traditional healers are more effective than modern medicine, especially as traditional healers can provide protection from witchcraft and can cleanse them from curses. Some communities believe in these traditional medicines to

such a point that they may delay seeking medical care until it is too late for anything to be done. For this reason, international organizations in Kenya and Tanzania, like the African Medical and Research Foundation (AMREF), have started partnering with the traditional healers to conduct community outreach programs that urge people to seek a medical diagnosis in a health facility prior to using herbal medicine. In addition to this, the local universities are also partnering with traditional healers in research and their setting up of specialization in herbal medicine.

In East Africa, when someone is sick, the family and close friends are expected to show support by visiting the sick person either in the hospital or at home. Visitors are expected to prepare favorite food or drinks, and to bring fruits with them during the visit. The family and friends are expected to eat this food along with the patient (if possible) while reassuring him/her that all will be well. If the patient is admitted to a hospital for a longer stay people are expected to take turns visiting and taking food. If the hospital policy allows, some families organize a caretaker to support the patient and to provide around the clock company for the entirety of the hospital stay. Once the patient is discharged, the family and friends are expected to continue visiting the sick person at home. In many cases, people may also give money to the patient during the visit to help purchase needed medicines or nutritious food to help the patient recover.

Cultural Reflections

1. How does access to medical care in your country compare to that in East Africa?
2. To what degree is access to medical care dependent on the socioeconomic status of people in your country? Is medical care paid for by the government, by private insurers, or is it the responsibility of each individual? How does this compare to the situation in East Africa?
3. Are there alternative forms of medical treatment that people in your country seek out either out of economic necessity or personal preference? How are those forms of treatment viewed by more mainstream medical professionals? How does this compare to the situation in East Africa?
4. When members of your community get sick are there clear expectations for what friends and family are supposed to do? Does that vary by region and/or socioeconomic status? How does this compare to the situation in East Africa?



Zoezi T

After getting her prescription from the pharmacy. Shamila calls the pharmacist to ask more details about the prescription. Listen to her conversation and answer the questions below.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila ametumiwa aina ngapi za dawa?
2. Shamila anahitaji kumeza tembe za kupunguza maumivu mara ngapi kwa siku?
3. Dawa za homa ya matumbo ni za rangi gani?
4. Je, Shamila anahitaji kutumia dawa zake kabla au baada ya kula chakula chake?
5. Shamila anahitaji kuzingatia masharti gani anapotumia dawa zake?

Grammar: Subjunctive Mood

The subjunctive mood is used to make suggestions and commands In most cases it is formed by dropping the tense marker (including *-ku* for monosyllabic verbs) and changing the final *-a* on the verb to an *-e*.

Un**akun**yw**a** maji mengi.
*You **drink** a lot of water.*

Unyw**e** maji mengi.
*You **should drink** a lot of water.*

A**liku**l**a** kiamsha kinywa.
*He **ate** breakfast.*

Al**e** kiamsha kinywa.
*He **should eat** breakfast.*

In those cases where the verb ends in a vowel other than *-a*, no change to the final vowel is required.

Ninasafiri zaidi.
*I **travel** frequently.*

Nisafiri zaidi.
*I **should travel** frequently.*

In addition to the simple subjunctive shown above, the subjunctive is used in a few other contexts:

- Subsequent commands following an imperative:

  Fungua kitabu **u**som**e**.
  *Open the book and **read** it.*

  Chukua kalamu na **u**andik**e** barua.
  *Take a pen ame **write** a letter.*

- Expressing a desire for others to do something:

Umfundishe Kiswahili.	*You should teach her Kiswahili.*
Tuwafundishe Kimaasai.	*We should teach them the Maasai language.*

- When following certain trigger verbs like *must*, *to tell* and *to want*.

Lazima **alale** mapema.	*He must **go** to bed early.*
Alituambia **tununue** vyakula vingi.	*She told us to **buy** a lot of food.*
Aliwataka **waondoke** mapema.	*He wanted them to **leave** early.*

The subjunctive is also typically used after the word *ili:*

Ninasoma kwa bidii **ili nipite** mtihani.
*I am studying hard **in order to pass** the exam.*

Mama alinunua kalamu **ili** mtoto **ajifunze** kuandika.
*The mother bought the pen **so that** the child **could learn** to write.*



Zoezi U

Use the subjunctive mood to tell a friend three to five things that they should do when they are sick. Here is an example to get you started:

Ukihisi maumivu ya kichwa unywe maji mengi na upumzike.
If you have a headache, drink plenty of water and rest.

Grammar: Negation of the Subjunctive

The subjunctive is negated by inserting the negative marker *-si* before the root of the subjunctive.

Nilale.	*I should sleep.*
Nisilale.	*I should not sleep.*
Ajaribu kukimbia?	*Should he try to run?*
Asijaribu kukimbia!	*He should not try to run!*



Zoezi V

Negate the subjunctive verbs in the following sentences.

1. Mtoto alale mapema.
2. Juma anahitaji apike vyakula mbalimbali.
3. Aende mapema sana.
4. Amwambie mwalimu kabla ya muda kutimia.
5. Aandike barua mapema.
6. Ampeleke mtoto kwa mama yake asubuhi.
7. Amchukue mtoto kutoka shuleni jioni.
8. Wasafishe nyumba siku ya jumamosi.
9. Waharibu vitabu vya maktaba.
10. Wapake rangi nyekundu kwenye lango.



Zoezi W

Two of your classmates who share an apartment are sick and a group of friends is planning to bring them food. Discuss what meals you will bring and why those are good choices for your sick friends. You might also talk about food items that one should not bring and provide reasons for those choice as well.



Zoezi X

You are recovering from a recent illness. Write an email to a Swahili-speaking friend describing your symptoms and recounting your experience with the East African medical community.

Key Vocabulary

Adjectives

changamka cheerful
changanyikiwa confused
dhaifu weak
hatari dangerous
kichefuchefu nauseous
mahututi serious (of an illness)
mgonjwa sickly
nguvu strong
pole sorry
unyonge very weak
wasiwasi worried

Nouns

bega shoulder
bendeji bandage
chandarua net
chechemea limb
choa skin disease
daktari; tabibu/mganga doctor
daktari wa macho optician
daktari wa meno; tabibu wa meno dentist
dawa; tembe; vidonge pill
eksirei; uyoka x-ray
furaha happiness
goti knee
homa fever
homa ya manjano yellow fever
hospitali hospital
huzuni sadness
jicho eye
jino tooth
kansa; saratani cancer
kichwa head
kidevu chin
kidole cha mguu toe
kidole cha mkono finger
kidonda wound
kifua chest
kifua kikuu tuberculosis
kifundo cha mguu ankle
kikohozi cough
kinga immunity
kionjamchuzi goatee
kipimadamu blood pressure cuff
kipimajoto thermometer
kipindupindu cholera
kisigino heel
kisogo back of head
kisonono gonorrhea
kisugudi elbow
kisukari diabetes
kitovu navel
kiuno waist
kizunguzungu/kisunzi dizziness
kliniki clinic

koleo scalpel
koo throat
kope eyebrows
kuendesha/kuhara diarrhea
kutapika vomiting
kwapa armpit
maabara laboratory
machela stretcher
mafua cold
masharubu moustache
maumivu pain
mboni pupil
mdomo mouth
mgongo back
mkono hand
mkunga midwife
muuguzi; nesi nurse
muundi shin
mzio allergies
ndevu beard
ndewe earlobe
nyonga wrist
nywele hair
paja thigh
paji forehead
pepopunda tetanus
plasta cast; plaster
pua nose
pumu asthma
sharafa sideburn
shavu cheek
shingo neck
shinikizo la damu hypertension
sikio ear
sindano needle; syringe
tako butt
taya jaw
tezi tumor
tibakemikali chemotherapy
titi breast
tumbo stomach
tumbo la kuhara dysentery
uchovu fatigue/tiredness
ugonjwa disease; illness; sickness
ukucha nail
ulimi tongue
unyayo sole
upungufu wa kinga mwilini (UKIMWI) AIDS
uso face
utapiamlo kwashiorkor (a severe form of malnutrition)
utosi crown of the head
zahanati walk-in clinic

Verbs

-kufa to die
-kinga; -zuia to prevent
-anguka (chini) to fall (down)
-pata kitanda to be admitted
-pata nafuu; -pona to get better
-pima to measure; to examine

-tibu to treat
-vunjika to break (a bone)
-chemshwa to be boiled

Key Phrases

Afya/siha njema. Good health.
Makiwa. (My) Condolences.
Ninakutakia afueni! I wish you quick recovery!
Pata nafuu/Ugua pole. Feel better.
Pole kwa ugonjwa! Sorry for the illness!
Poleni kwa msiba sorry for the loss.
Uko afadhali. you look better.
Usijali. Utapona! Don't worry. You will recover!

6.2 Mavazi na maumbile

Zoezi A

Shamila and her classmate Fola have been invited along with the other international students to have dinner with the Dean of their college. Read their discussion about what they should wear for this special event and then answer the questions that follow.



Shamila: Habari za mchana Fola?

Fola: Nzuri sana Shamila?

Shamila: Nimefurahi sana kupata mwaliko kutoka kwa bwana na Bi. Furaha.

Fola: Mimi pia. Nina furaha mno na pia tutapata nafasi ya kukutana na wanafunzi wengine kutoka nchi zingine na pia viongozi wengi wa chuo.

Shamila: Mimi pia. Je, unapanga kuvaa mavazi gani?

Fola: Mwaliko huu ni muhimu. Ninapanga kuvaa blauzi na sketi ya kitenge pamoja na kitambaa chake. Nilishona mavazi haya wiki mbili zilizopita kwa ajili ya mkutano huu. Je, wewe utavaa mavazi gani?

Shamila: Mimi ninapanga kuvaa sketi ndefu, blauzi, na koti ndogo.

Fola: Bila shaka ninajua utapendeza sana.

Shamila: Wewe pia. Sijawahi kukuona umevaa mavazi ya kitenge lakini ninajua unapenda mavazi ya kupendeza. Haya tutaonana baadaye.

Fola: Inshallah.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila na Fola wamepata mwaliko wa kuhudhuria chakula cha jioni kutoka kwa nani?
2. Fola anapanga kuvaa mavazi gani?
3. Shamila atavaa mavazi gani?Fola alishona mavazi yake lini?
4. Shamila na Fola wanatazamia kukutana na nani katika halfa hii?



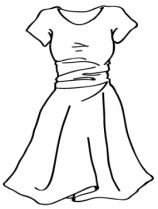
tisheti



koti



blauzi



gauni



jinsi



sketi



dera



sidiria



hijabu



suruali fupi



suruali ndefu



viatu

Zoezi B

Joseph is packing his bag for a four-day trip to a conference in Zanzibar with a group of classmates. While he is packing, one of his classmates calls him to check whether he is ready. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Juma: Habari gani Joseph?

Joseph: Nzuri Juma. Uko vipi?

Juma: Niko salama. Nimemaliza kujitayarisha niko tayari kuondoka. Na wewe je ?

Joseph: Bado ninajiaandaa. Ndiyo ninaanza kupakia nguo zangu. Lakini sina uhakika ninahitaji mavazi yapi. Je, umepakia mavazi ya aina gani?

Juma: Kwa sababu ni safari ya siku nne sijabeba nguo nyingi. Nimebeba suruali ndefu mbili, shati mbili na tai mbili. Pia nimebeba suti moja ambayo nitavalia siku ya kuwasilisha. Nimebeba suruali fupi tatu, tisheti tatu, mavazi ya kuogelea na nguo za ndani.

Joseph: Ahaa! Ninaona hujabeba mavazi mengi. Ninafikiri nitabeba suruali ndefu tatu, shati tatu pamoja na tai kwa ajili ya kongamano. Mimi sipendi kuvalia suti kwa hivyo sitabeba suti. Pia nitabeba suruali fupi tatu, tisheti tatu na mavazi ya kuogelea.

Juma: Je, unafikiri unahitaji kubeba angalau koti moja?

Joseph: Kweli kabisa. Nitabeba koti mbili nyepesi. Asante kunikumbusha.

Juma: Karibu. Kwa hivyo utakuwa tayari baada ya muda gani?

Joseph: Nitakuwa tayari baada ya dakika thelathini. Tukutane katika lango kuu la chuo baada ya dakika thelatini.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo kwa kuonyesha iwapo ni kweli au si kweli.

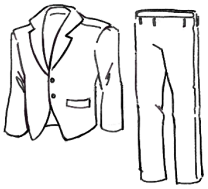
1. Joseph na Juma wanapanga safari ya siku nne.
2. Juma hajapaki suti kwa sababu yeye hapendi kuvaa suti.
3. Juma na Joseph wamepaki mavazi ya kuogelea, suruali fupi na tisheti.
4. Joseph atabeba koti mbili nyepesi katika safari hii.
5. Juma na Joseph watakutana katika lango la chuo kikuu kisha waweze kuanza safari yao.



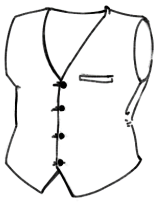
shati



kanzu



suti



vesti



tai



sweta



kofia



mshipi

Zoezi C

Interview two classmates to find out what kinds of clothes they like to wear on weekends versus weekdays. Be as detailed as possible. Be prepared to report back to the class.

Zoezi D

You and your classmates are planning a weekend trip to Mt. Kilimanjaro. Call your classmates and talk about the clothing items you should pack for the trip.

Zoezi E

Shamila was supposed to meet her younger sister at the airport but is delayed at a school event. She calls Joseph to ask if he can pick her up. Read their conversation and complete the activity below.

Shamila: Habari za leo Joseph?

Joseph: Niko salama Shamila, uko vipi?

Shamila: Niko salama kabisa! Ningependa unisaidie kidogo.

Joseph: Sawa, bila shaka kama itawezekana nitakusaidia kadri ya uwezo wangu.

Shamila: Asante sana! Dada yangu Tamara aliyekuwa anasafiri kutoka Carlifonia jana kama nilivyokueleza atawasili katika uwanja wa ndege ndani saa mbili zijazo. Kwa bahati mbaya siwezi kwenda kumlaki katika uwanja wa ndege kwa sababu ya shughuli za idara ambazo ninaongoza. Ningependa kukuomba uende umlaki katika Uwanja wa ndege wa Julius Nyerere. Unaweza kwenda pamoja na kaka yako Yusufu kumlaki?

Joseph: Hamna neno tutakwenda kumlaki Tamara. Nitakwenda pamoja na Yusufu ambaye atanielekeza. Je, kati ya Tamara na wewe ni nani mkubwa kuliko mwingine?

Shamila: Mimi ni mdogo wake. Tamara ana miaka thelathini na miwili kwa hivyo ni mkubwa wangu.

Joseph: Oooh, kweli? Sawa. Unaweza kunieleza umbo lake ili niweze kumtambua kwa urahisi kwa sababu hatakuwa na simu ya Tanzania.

Shamila: Bila shaka. Yeye ni Mmarekani mweusi kama mimi, kwa hivyo rangi yake ni ya kahawia inayofanana na yangu. Kwa kimo, yeye ana takriban futi tano unusu, kwa hivyo si mfupi wala si mrefu sana, lakini ni mrefu kidogo kunishinda. Pia yeye ni mwembamba. Nywele zake ni nyeusi kama makaa na ni fupi. Ingawa sijui mapambo aliyoyavaa kwenye safari hii, yeye huwa na kipini kwenye pua. Yeye huvaa miwani.

Joseph: Asante kwa maelezo hayo mema. Ninafikiri yatanisaidia kumtambua kwa urahisi.

Shamila: Hana simu, lakini haitakuwa vigumu kumfahamu kutokana na maumbile yake niliyokueleza.

Joseph: Sawa, tutaonana baadaye. Nitakujulisha iwapo nitakuwa na ugumu wowote wa kumpata Tamara. Kwaheri.

Je, kauli hizi ni kweli au uongo? Kama si kweli andika kauli sahahi kulingana na mahojiano kati ya Shamila na Joseph.

1. Tamara ni mkubwa kuliko Shamila kiumri.
2. Tamara ni msichana mfupi sana kwa kimo.
3. Kwa kulinganisha, Shamila ni mrefu zaidi ya dada yake Tamara.
4. Tamara si msichana mwembamba, yeye ni mnene.

5. Tamara ana nywele nyeusi sana.
6. Tamara ana nywele refu, kwa kuwa hapendi nywele fupi.
7. Tamara na dada yake Shamila wote ni weusi.
8. Rangi ya uso wa Tamara ni kahawia kama dada yake.
9. Tamara anapenda mapambo, ana kipini kwenye pua.
10. Tamara huwahavaimiwani.
11. Shamila ataweza kwenda kwa uwanja wa ndege kumlaki dada yake.
12. Joseph atakwenda uwanja wa ndege kumlaki Tamara,
13. Tamara ana umri wa miaka thelathini na sita.
14. Tamara atampigia Joesph simu akiwasili kwenye uwanja wa ndege



Zoezi F

Shamila has just arrived in Mwanza to visit Farida's sister Anita, and she is waiting to be picked up at the bus station. Her contact requests her to describe her outfit so she can be able to identify her from the crowd. Listen to Shamila and her contact describing their outfits to each other.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila amesafiri Mwanza kutoka wapi?
2. Shamila amesimama wapi wakati ambapo anamsubiri Anita?
3. Shamila amevaa mavazi gani?
4. Anita amevaa mavazi gani?
5. Je, Anita amesuka nywele?

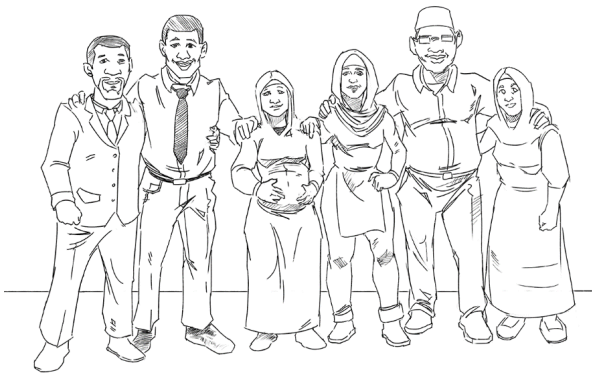


Zoezi G

You are asked to pick up new university students from Tanzania at the airport. You do not know what they look like and are having trouble finding them. Luckily you have their cellphone numbers. Call the students and find out how they are dressed so that you can identify them.

Zoezi H

Take turns describing the people below in detail. Provide as much detail as you can (gender, age, clothing, and body type) to help your partner identify which person you are describing. Once you have identified the person, work with your partner(s) to expand the description, particularly those elements that distinguish the person from others in the pictures. Some additional vocabulary is provided to help you get started.





chale - tattoo
kijana - young
kionja mchuzi – goatee
kitambi - pot belly
maji ya kunde – brown
masharubu - moustache
mfupi - short
mja mzito – pregnant
mlemavu – disabled
mnene - fat
mpofu – blind
mrefu - tall
mrembo - beautiful
mtanashati – handsome
mwembamba - slender
mweupe – light
mweusi – dark
mzee - old
nywele fupi - short hair
nywele ndefu - long hair
sharafa - sideburn
sura mbaya – ugly
udevu - beard
umri wa kati - middle-aged
upara - bald
uso duara - round face
uso mrefu - long face
uso wa wajihi - good looking
wastani - average/medium

Zoezi I

Write a detailed description of one of your classmates. Read the description aloud to the class for everyone to guess.

Sarufi: Making Comparisons

There are generally two types of comparisons: those that suggest that two things have an equal amount of some quality and those that suggest that one thing has a greater/lesser degree of some quality.

Here are some examples stressing that two objects are similar:

Joseph ni mwerevu **kama** baba yake.
*Joseph is **as** smart **as** his father.*

Urefu wa Shamila **unalingana na** urefu wa Tamara.
*Shamila's height is **the same as** Tamara's height.*

Suti yangu na ile ya ndugu yangu ni **sawa kwa** gharama.
*My suit and that of my brother are the **same** cost.*

Mavazi ya Bi Farida **yanafanana na** ya binti yake Waridi.
*Bi Farida's clothes **are similar to** those of her daughter, Waridi.*

Waridi **anamsabihi** mama yake Bi Farida.
*Waridi **resembles** her mother Ms. Farida.*

Here are some examples of comparing dissimilar objects:

Joseph ni mrefu **kuliko** Shamila.
*Joseph is tall**er** than Shamila.*

Dianne ni mwembamba **kushinda** dada yake Shamila.
*Dianne is thinn**er** than her sister, Shamila.*

Suti yake ni ghali **zaidi ya** yangu.
*His suit is **more** expensive than mine.*

Hospitali za kibinafsi nchini Kenya ni nzuri **zaidi ya** hospitali za kiserikali.
*Private hospitals in Kenya are **better** than public hospitals.*

Note that while English often forms comparative adjectives with the suffix *-er,* Kiswahili forms them with the addition of contextual words. The form of the adjective itself remains the same.



Zoezi J

Combine the two sentences to create a single sentence with a comparative. Keep in mind that there may be more than one possible answer.

Aisha ni mdogo. Chacha ni ndugu mkubwa wa Aisha.
Aisha ni mdogo kuliko ndugu yake Chacha.
Chacha ni mkubwa kuliko dada yake Aisha.

1. Waridi ni mrefu kwa kimo. Hassan ni mfupi.
2. Gauni ya Bi. Farida ni ghali. Gauni ya Binti yake Bi. Farida ni ya bei rahisi.
3. Suti ya Joseph ni ya bluu. Suti ya Yusufu ni ya bluu.

4. Nywele za Shamila ni ndefufu. Dianne ana nywele fupi.
5. Joseph ana ndevu ndefu. Hassan ana ndevu fupi.

Sarufi: Superlatives

In English superlatives are usually formed by adding the *-est* suffix to an adjective (tallest, shortest, smartest, etc.). In Kiswahili they are formed by adding contextual words to an adjective much like we saw with comparatives. But in addition to familiar phrases like *kuliko, zaida ya,* and *kushinda*, superlatives also add forms of –ote (all/entire) or –o-ote (anyone or anything).

Gauni nyekundu ni bei **ghali kuliko** nguo **zozote** zingine dukani.
*The red dress is **more expensive than all of the other** clothes in the shop.*
*The red dress is the **most expensive** of all the clothes in the shop.*

Joseph ni **mrefu zaidi ya** wanafunzi **wote** katika darasa la Kiswahili.
*Juma is **taller than all (the other)** students in the Kiswahili class.* OR
*Juma is the **tallest** student in the Kiswahili class.*

Soko la Kariakor ni **kubwa kushinda** masoko **yote** katika mji wa Dar es Salaam.
*Kariakor market is **bigger than all other** markets in Dar es Salaam.* OR
*Kariakor market is the **biggest** market in Dar es Salaam*



Zoezi K

Create sentences with superlatives that build logically upon the cue sentences that you are given. Try to come up with as many logical sentences as you can.

Mfano:

Ethan ni mwenye mbio.
Ethan ndiye mwanafunzi mwenye mbio zaidi ya wanafunzi wote shuleni.

1. Aisha ni mwanafunzi mzuri.
2. Hasheem Thabeet anacheza mpira wa vikapu.
3. Ndugu yangu ni mchanga.
4. Matunda ya Bi. Juma ni matamu.
5. Ajuma Nasanyana ni mwanamitindo.
6. Diamond Platnumz ni rapper.
7. Safari ya kuja jijini ni ndefu.
8. Bibi yangu anapenda kusafisha nyumba.
9. Elon Musk ni mjasiriamali.
10. Mkulima huyu ni mwenye bidii.

Zoezi L

Work with a partner to come up with a superlative to describe each person in the class. When all the groups are finished, read your answers aloud to see if there is general agreement.

Zoezi M

One afternoon, Shamila and her host mother go shopping as Shamila would like to buy some clothes from the local market. Read her conversation with the seller and answer the questions that follow.

Muuzaji: Karibu sana dada katika duka letu. Tuna mavazi mengi ya ina mbalimbali.

Shamila: Asante sana. Kweli ninaona mna mavazi mengi.

Muuzaji: Hapa kuna gauni za kitenge hapa, suruali ndefu na blauzi za kitenge. Pia kuna aina nyingi za mavazi rasmi ya wanawake. Kuna mavazi rasmi na yasiyo rasmi. Kwa mavazi rasmi kuna suti za suruali ndefu and pia suti za sketi. Pia kuna sketi, suruali ndefu, blauzi, gauni na koti.

Shamila: Aha! Mimi ningependa mavazi yasiyo rasmi. Ninapanga kuhudhuria sherehe ya harusi ya rafiki yangu kwa hivyo ningependa gauni au sketi na blauzi ya kitenge.

Muuzaji: Kuna vitenge vya aina nyingi chaguo ni lako. Njoo nikuonyeshe. Hii hapa ni blauzi na sketi na upande huu kuna gauni mbalimbali. Je unapenda rangi gani?

Shamila: Ningependa sketi na baluzi. Ninapenda rangi ya manjano na kijani zikiwa pamoja.

Muuzaji: Safi. Kuna miundo miwili ya kitenge yenye maumbo ya manjano na kijani. Moja ni yenye sketi ndefu na nyingine ni ya sketi fupi. Unaweza kujipima miundo yote miwili. Ninafikiri saizi hii itakutosha.

Shamila: Miundo hii yote inapendeza. Wacha nijipime.

(Shamila goes to the fitting room and comes back after 5 minutes.)

Muuzaji: Umependa ile ndefu au fupi? Miundo yote miwili inakutosha vizuri?

Shamila: Nimependa hii ndefu. Ina kimo kizuri na rangi yake inapendeza mno. Bibi Farida pia anadhani hii ni nzuri zaidi kuliko ile nyingine.

Muuzaji: Ninakubaliana nanyi . Muundo huu ni mzuri kwa umbo lako na rangi pia zinapendenza mno.

Shamila: Je, unauzaje?

Muuzaji: Blauzi na sketi pamoja ni shilingi elfu mbili na mia tano.

Shamila: Ala! Mbona unauza bei ghali hivyo?

Muuzaji: Hiyo si bei ghali. Matini ya nguo hii ni mazuri sana na itadumu kwa muda muda mrefu. Rangi yake haivuji. Utaifurahia.

Shamila: Tafadhali punguza bei kidogo.

Muuzaji: Bei ya mwisho ni shilingi elfu mbili na mia nne.

Shamila: Sawa. Pesa ndizo hizi.

Muuzaji: Karibu sana. Ungependa kitu kingine? Kuna kitambaa ambacho kinaambatana na nguo hii.

Shamila: La kwa leo tutachukua nguo hii tu. Tutarudi wakati mwingine.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila anapenda rangi gani?
2. Shamila alinunua mavazi gani?
3. Mwuzaji alimwuzia Shamila mavazi kwa shilingi ngapi?
4. Muuzaji alisema mavazi hayo yana ubora gani?
5. Je, Shamila alinunua kitu kingine kutoka kwa mwuzaji?



Zoezi N

Joseph is shopping for some clothes to wear during his internship in the Department of Languages and Literature at the University of Dar es Salaam. Listen to his conversation with the salesman.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Joseph angependa kununua mavazi gani?
2. Joseph amechagua suruali ndefu za rangi gani?
3. Joseph amechagua shati za rangi gani?
4. Kwa nini Joseph atarudi dukani siku inayofuata ?
5. Mavazi ambayo Joseph ameyanunua yametoka nchi gani?
6. Kwa jumla Joseph atamlipa mwuzaji pesa ngapi?
7. Joseph anatarajia kupokea shati lake mwendo wa saa ngapi?

Sarufi: Interrogative Adjectives

In the course of the book we have seen interrogatives like *nani* (who?), *nini* (what?), *wapi* (where?), and *gani* (which or what kind of). These are all in fixed forms and are usually found at the end of the sentence.

- Jina lako ni **nani**?
- Wewe unakula **nini**?
- Unatoka **wapi**?
- Wewe unapenda chakula **gani**?

Interrogative adjectives ask for more information about a specific noun and change depending on the class of that noun.

The interrogative ***-ngapi*** (how many?) is only used with plural nouns and the answer must be a number:

Una miaka mi**ngapi**?
How many years have you? (How old are you?)

Nina miaka thelathini na miwili.
I am thirty-two years old.

Ana kaka wa**ngapi**?
How many brothers does she have?

Ana kaka watatu.
He/she has three brothers.

The interrogative ***-gani*** (what kind?) can be used with singular and plural nouns and generally solicits a description with adjectives:

Je umevalia mavazi ma**gani**?
What clothes are you wearing?

Je, ulinunua viti vigani?
Which type of chairs did you buy?

The interrogative ***-pi*** (which?) can be used with singular and plural nouns:

Ni mtoto yu**pi** analala?
Which child is sleeping?

Unapenda matunda ya**pi**?
Which fruits do you like?



Zoezi O

Use the correct forms of the interrogatives *-ngapi*, *-gani* and *-pi* to fill in the blanks below. Pay careful attention to the context and the specific noun class of the given interrogative.

1. Unafikiri ni shati_____ ninaweza kununua na shillingi elfu kumi za Kenya?
2. Ni pahali_____ tunaweza kupata mavazi tunayohitaji kwa ajili ya arusi kwenye soko la Makumbusho?
3. Ungependa kununua koti_____ kati ya haya ya rangi za bluu na ya rangi ya manjano?

4. Ni gauni_____ litavaliwa na wazazi wa Bi Arusi.
5. Ungependa nikuletee mikufu_____ nitakapoenda sokoni kesho?



Zoezi P

Joseph receives the package from the Jambo shop the day after his shopping trip. When he opens the package, he discovers that they have sent the wrong shirt (not the selected size and color), and the package also includes pants. Pretend that you are Joseph and call the customer service line to discuss the issues with your order.



Zoezi Q

Browse the *Amore!* online clothing site and select a few items that you might like to purchase.

Then, create a photo collage of the clothing items with a brief description and an explanation of why you chose each item. Be ready to respond to your classmates' questions about your selections.

amore.co.ke

Zoezi R

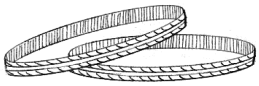
Explain to two classmates your favorite and least favorite accessories and why you like those accessories.

Wewe unapenda kuvaa mapambo gani?

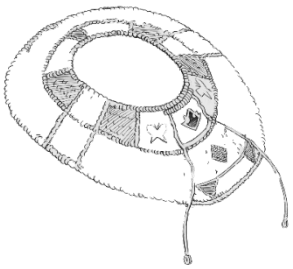
Wewe hupendi kuvaa mapambo gani?



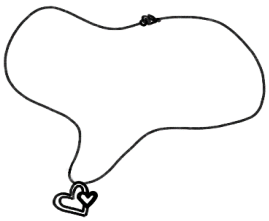
miwani



bangili



ushanga



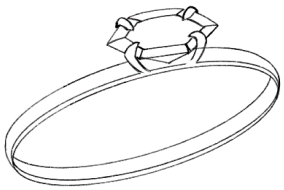
kidani



saa ya mkono



marashi



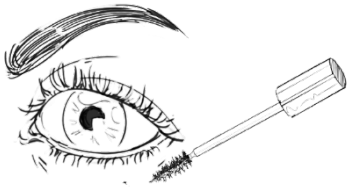
pete



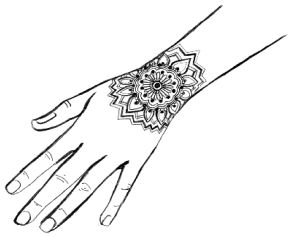
herini



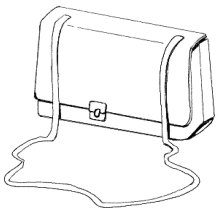
chanjo/nembo



wanja



hina



begi

Zoezi S

Work with a partner to describe the clothing and accessories of the students below. Make sure to include comparatives and superlatives in your description. Be ready to share your description with the class.



Cultural Exploration

Different cultures perceive the concept of beauty differently. In East and Central Africa where Swahili is widely spoken, a woman's value is measured in terms of her kindness and her overall character. A taarab song released by Tanzanian artist, Mwanahawa Ali, entitled *Mwanamke hulka*, which literally means a woman's character, recognizes the essence of a woman's values as more important than how beautiful she looks, and the need to be both respectful and respectable. Previous artists such as Samba Mapangala from Congo have propelled the same notion in their music. In his song *"Marina,"* Samba says "*uzuri wa mwanamke sio urembo ni tabia"* (the goodness of a woman is not beauty but her character).

Beauty is a concept that is normally associated with women rather than men among traditional Swahili speakers, and historically has been synonymous to being plump. A man with a slender wife would often be advised to feed her so that she would become plump and healthy. A woman of good character was also expected to not display her body publicly by wearing revealing or tight-fitting clothing. For this reason, Muslim women on the coast of East Africa who cover their body and hair, and wear a hijab, and a loose long dress referred to as *buibui*, are still widely perceived as beautiful. East African women of older generations often take it upon themselves to urge younger women they see in public to be more traditional in their dress. It is believed that a woman's character, kindness, and other key values are passed on to her children, so they must be very carefully cultivated.

The western concept of beauty is increasingly taking root among Swahili speakers due to the prevalence of movies, television and social media. Fashion models are almost exclusively slender girls that wear more revealing western-style clothing. Globalization has also led many to see lighter skin as a necessary component of beauty. The increased use of chemical skin lighteners, which are common in many parts of the world, is becoming a major social concern both because of their dangerous health effects and the psychological pressure on those with darker complexions to use them. Watch the speech by actress Lupita Nyong'o linked below to get her perspective on the issue.



tinyurl.com/2x4zy9ak

Cultural Reflection

1. How does the notion of beauty in your culture compare to East Africa?
2. To what extent has the notion of beauty from other cultures influenced and informed changes in terms of how people perceive beauty in your culture? How does this compare to the situation in East Africa?
3. What is the culture of dress code among different subgroups of people in your cultures? What are the motivations behind the dress codes? How have they changed/evolved over time? How does this situation compare to East Africa?

Zoezi T

Shamila and Joseph are planning to go to the Maasai Market over the weekend to buy some souvenirs for their family members. Before they go, they talk about the gifts they would like to buy for their family members and friends. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Shamila: Vipi Joseph? Habari za mchana?

Joseph: Salama Shamila. Ninafurahi kwa sababu wiki hii inakaribia kuisha.Nimekuwa na kazi nyingi sana.

Shamila: Mimi pia ninatazamia kwenda kwa soko la wazi la Maasai kama tulivyopanga mwanzoni mwa wiki.

Joseph: Mimi pia. Ninafahamu kuwa soko hili ni maarufu sana.

(*Joseph shows Shamila details of the market on his phone*)

Ninaona hapa kuwa soko hili linajulikana kwa michoro ya Kiafrika, mapambo, mavazi michongo ya mbao na vikapu vilivyotengenezwa kwa mikono.

Shamila: Kweli soko hili ni maarufu sana. Ningependa kununua zawadi chache kwa rafiki na familia yangu. Nitawanunulia dada zangu pamoja na mama yangu shanga, herini, bangili, na mikoba. Ninafikiri watapenda mavazi ya kitenge. Nitanunua gauni nzuri za kuvaa msimu wa joto.

Joseph: Zawadi nzuri sana. Ninafikiri watazifurahia zawadi zao. Je, utawapelekea zawadi gani kaka yako na baba yako?

Shamila: Kaka yangu anapenda vidani vya kipekee. Kwa hivyo nitamnunulia bangili, kidani na shati la kitenge. Baba yangu nitamnunulia shati,

na mshipi. Yeye hapendi kuvaa mapambo. Je wewe unapanga kununua zawadi gani?

Joseph: Nitanunua mapambo mengi kwa familia narafiki zangu na pia nitanunua vitu vya kisanaa. Mapambo ambayo yametengenezwa kwa shanga huvutia sana. Kwa hivyo nitanunua bangili, udodi, furungu, herini, kwaadada zangu. Zawadi za wanaume zitakuwa vibeti, na mishipi. Wazazi wangu wanapenda michoro. Nitanunua michoro kadhaa inayoangazia hali ya maisha katika Afrika mashariki. Pia nitanunua michongo ya wanyama ya kupamba nyumba na ofisi.

Shamila: Inaonekana utanunua zawadi nyingi nzuri. Mimi pia ningependa kununua vifaa vya kisanaa na vitu vya mapambo kama michongo na kadhalika lakini nitavinunua kama tunakaribia kusafiri kurudi Marekani.

Joseph: Una mipango mizuri. Mimi siwezi kuhifadhi hela kwa muda huo wote ninahofia nitazitumia kwa vitu vingine.

Shamila: Kweli kabisa huo pia ni uamuzi mzuri.

Joseph: Sawa basi tutaonana Jumamosi mwendo wa saa nne kamili asubuhi. Nitakuja nyumbani kwako kukuchukua.

Shamila: Tutaonana Jumamosi asubuhi inshallah.

Eleza iwapo ni kweli au si kweli

1. Joseph na Shamila watakwenda sokoni siku ya Jumapili.
2. Kaka ya Shamila hapendi vidani.
3. Shamila na Joseph watanunua mavazi sawa kwa dada zao na rafiki.
4. Joseph atanunua vifaa vya kisanaa au michoro na michongo wakati wa kurudi Marekani ukikaribia.
5. Baba ya Shamila anapenda mapambo.



Zoezi U

During your study abroad, you decide to go to a local open-air market to buy some new clothes as the ones you brought with you are now a bit worn out. Make a shopping list of the items you would like to buy. Once at the market, select the clothing items you would like to buy and haggle the price with the seller.

Sarufi: Direct and Indirect Objects

A direct object is a noun (or noun phrase) that receives the action of the verb. The indirect object is a noun (or noun phrase) that is impacted by the action of the verb, typically as a recipient of the direct object. Consider the following examples in English:

I read a book.

I read the child a book.

In both sentences the word “book” is the direct object. In the second sentence “child” is the indirect object.

The presence of an indirect object in Kiswahili is indicated on the verb by a prefix just before the root. That prefix agrees with the noun class of the indirect object.

> Nili**m**somea **mtoto** kitabu.
> *I read the child a book.*
>
> Nili**wa**somea **watoto** kitabu.
> *I read the **children** a book.*
>
> Nili**wa**nunulia **wazazi** wangu zawadi ya gari.
> I bought my **parents** a car as a present.

As you may have noticed, the ending on the verb form also changes if an indirect object is present. If the vowel in the syllable preceding the ending is ***o*** or ***e*** (such as in ***soma*** *and* ***leta****),* the letter ***e*** is added to the ending thus creating verbs (som**e**a and let**e**a). If the vowel in the syllable preceding the ending is ***a***, ***i*** or ***u*** *(for instance in nun**u**a)*, the letter ***i*** is added to the ending; in cases where the root ends in two vowels (like *nunua*), an extra *l* may be added to break up the string of vowels, resulting in the verb *nunu**li**a*.

The indirect object follows immediately after the verb and before the direct object. It can, however, be left out of the sentence if it is clear from context.

> Nili**m**somea kitabu.
> *I read **him/her** the book.*
>
> Nili**wa**nunulia gari.
> *I bought **them** a car.*



Zoezi V

Complete the following table by providing the appropriate pronoun marker and an example sentence using the pronoun marker with the verb provided. Pay careful attention that you use the correct indirect object prefix and underline the direct object. The first sentence has been provided as an example.

Subject Pronoun	**Pronoun Marker**	**Verb root**	**Sentence**
mimi (I)	ni-	-soma	Mimi ninawasomea <u>vitabu</u> hivi. *I am reading these books to them.*
wewe (you singular)		-pika	
yeye (he/she)		-patia	

sisi (we/us)		-nunua	
nyinyi (you; plural)		-kula	
wao (they/them)		-tazama	



Zoezi W

Poll your classmates about what they would like to buy their family members for the upcoming holiday. Be prepared to share your poll results with the class.



Zoezi X

You will be completing your study abroad trip in Tanzania within the next month. Before you travel back home, you would like to buy souvenirs for your friends and family members at a local open-air market. Remember to haggle with the sellers to get the best price for the items.



Zoezi Y

Find a picture of your family or some fictional family and describe them in as much detail as you can. You will want to include a general physical description (tall/short, old/young, etc.) and a description of the clothing they are wearing. To fill out the description, provide other interesting facts to give us a better sense of who they are (profession, age, hobbies, etc.). Write at least three to four large paragraphs.

Key Vocabulary

Adjectives

fupi short
ndefu long
nyepesi light
nzito heavy
rangi rangi multicolored
laini/nyororo smooth
ngumu rough
kavu dry
kuu kuu/zee old
mpya new
zima whole
kipande piece
bora better/suitable
safi/nadhifu clean/nice/smart
rahisi cheap
ghali expensive
tele plenty/abundant
nadra rare
haba chache
angavu dry
giza dark
mwangaza light

Nouns

bangili bangle
barghasia; bulibuli white embroidered Islamic hat
begi bag
buibui veil worn by a Muslim woman
buti boot
bwelasuti; ovaroli; surupwenye overalls
chale incision on the body
chanjo;nembo tattoo
chupi underpants
fulana; tisheti t-shirt
furungu anklet
gaguro short petticoat
glove glove
hazama tongue ring
hina henna
jini; jinsi jeans
kabuti long coat
kamisi long petticoat
kanchiri; sidiria brassiere
kanga cotton cloth with four borders
kaniki a black mourning dress; apron
kaptula; suruali fupi shorts
kiatu shoes
kibeti wallet; purse
kichana comb
kidani necklace
kikoi loin cloth
kikuba necklace
kikuku decoration for the arm
kilemba turban
kipini decoration for the ear

kipuli earring
kitambaa headscarf
kitenge African print cloth
kipekee unique
kizibau vest
kofia cap; hat
koti coat
koti la kuogea bathrobe
mapambo decorations
marashi cologne; perfume
mavazi; nguo cloth; clothes
mavazi ya kike women's clothing
mavazi ya kiume men's clothing
miwani glasses
mkufu ornamental chain
mshipi belt
ndonya upper lip plug
ngeu red ochre
njuga ankle bells
nyerere; udodi decoration for the leg
pambo decoration
patipati slippers
pete ring
rinda dress
saa ya mkono wristwatch
shali shawl
shati shirt
shuka bed sheet
shumizi slip
sketi skirt
soksi socks
suruali pants
suti suit
sweta sweater
tai tie
ubani incense
utandio scarf
wanja eyeliner

Key Phrases

mzee sana very old
sura mbaya not good looking
Uko maridadi. You look nice. (Specific phrase for ladies).
umbo nzuri nice physical appearance
Unapendeza. You look nice.
vazi la rangi rangi multicolored cloth
Vazi lako linapendeza. Your outfit is lovely.

6.3 Leo Hali ya Hewa Iko Vipi?

Zoezi A

Before Shamila leaves the house, she checks the weather app on her phone and talks to Mrs. Farida about the weather so that they can effectively plan their activities. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Kuna baridi.



Kuna joto kiasi.



Kuna joto jingi.



Kuna mawingu.



Kuna mawingu kiasi.



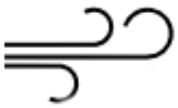
Kuna jua.



Kuna mvua.



Kuna radi.



Kuna upepo.

Shamila: Shikamoo Bi. Farida. Umeamka vizuri?

Farida: Marahaba mwanangu. Nimeamka vizuri. Je, wewe ulilala vizuri?

Shamila: Nililala vizuri ijapo kulikuwa na baridi kali usiku.

Farida: Ungeniambia nikupe blanketi nyingine. Huu ni msimu wa baridi kwa hivyo kuna baridi mno wakati wa usiku na alfajiri.

Shamila: Ahaa. Wacha niangalie hali ya hewa itakuwa vipi leo.

Farida: Kulingana na utabiri wa hali ya hewa, leo kutakuwa na vipindi vifupi vya jua asubuhi, mawingu mengi, na mwendo wa alasiri kutakuwa na mvua nyingi na ngurumo za radi.

Shamila: Kweli ni msimu wa masika. Wiki hii yote kumekuwa na mvua nyingi sana. Kwa hivyo nitajaribu nimalize shughuli chuoni mapema ili nirudi nyumbani kabla ya alasiri. Sipendi kuwa barabarani baada ya mvua kunyesha kwa kuwa huwa na msongamano mkubwa wa magari.

Farida: Hakikisha umebeba mwavuli kwa sababu utauhitaji ili usinyeshewe na mvua. Pia vaa koti au jaketi nzuri la kukusitirina baridi.

Shamila: Ndiyo, nina mwavuli mdogo ndani ya mkoba wangu na nitavaa jaketi nzito la baridi. Je, wewe utafanya nini leo siku yako ya mapumziko.

Farida: Nilitaka kufua nguo zetu lakini kwa sababu mvua itanyesha mapema sitafua leo. Nitaenda shambani kukagua kazi inavyoendelea. Wafanyakazi wanapalilia mahindi na kupanda mboga. Nitaenda sokoni kununua mbegu za mchicha, sukuma wiki, vitunguu na viazi.

Shamila: Kila la heri. Ninaona una shughuli nyingi muhimu ili kukahikisha mazao yako ni mazuri. Nitawasaidia wazazi wangu na kazi za shambani wikendi hii.

Farida: Hamna neno. Wewe pia uwe na siku njema.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Hali ya hewa mjini Dar es Salaam iko vipi leo?
2. Shamila atavaa nguo gani leoi?
3. Kwa nini Shamila atabeba mwavuli?
4. Shamila anapanga kurudi nyumbani saa ngapi, Na kwa nini?
5. Bi. Farida ana shughuli gani leo?
6. Kwa nini Bi. Farida atanunua mbegu za mchicha, sukuma wiki, vitunguu na viazi?
7. Je, leo Bi. Farida ataenda kazini?
8. Shamila angependa kusaidia kwenye kazi ya shambani lini? Unafikiri kwa nini hawezi kusaidia siku zingine za wiki?

Sarufi: Expressing "to have"

One of the first verbs that you learned in Kiswahili was "to have":

Nina kaka mmoja lakini **sina** dada.
I have one brother, but I don't have a sister.

Baba yangu **ana** umri wa miaka 57.
My father is 57 years old. (literally "My father has 57 years")

There is, however, a bit of a twist with the forms of this verb in the past and future tenses. You saw a few examples of this earlier in the unit and in the preceding dialogue:

Nitakujulisha iwapo **nitakuwa na** ugumu wowote.
*I will let you know if I **(will) have** any problems.*

Nililala vizuri japo **kulikuwa na** baridi kali usiku.
*I slept well even though **it was** very cold last night.*
(I slept well even though there was a lot of cold at night)

Wiki hii yote **kumekuwa na** mvua nyingi sana.
*All this week there **has been** a lot of rain.*

You will note in these examples that in addition to the tense markers on these verbs the root expands with the addition of *-kuwa* and the *na* is a separate word. This is actually the regular pattern for all forms of the verb other than the present tense. Here are some additional examples of the negated forms.

Kuna baridi.
It is cold.

Hakuna baridi.
It is not cold.

Nilikuwa na kamusi.
I had a dictionary.

Sikuwa na kamusi.
***I did not have** a dictionary.*

Watakuwa na pesa za kutosha kwenda likizo.
They will have enough money to go on vacation.

Hawatakuwa na pesa za kutosha kwenda likizo.
They will not have *enough money to go on vacation.*



Zoezi B

Use the phrases provided to fill in the blanks in the sentences that follow.

uwe	kuwa na	kutakuwa na	hutakuwa na
kuna	kutokuwa na		
kulikuwa	watakuwa na	atakuwa na	hakuna

1. Bwana Juma _____ kofia la rangi jeupe na kanzu ndefu siku ya Ijumaa atapokuwa akisherehekea sikukuu ya Ramadhani.

2. Sita _____ suti kesho ingawa ninajua watu wengi _____ mavazi rasmi kwenye sherehe hii.

3. Usipobeba koti na sweta _____ nguo za kukuzuia baridi.

4. Jana.....na mvua kubwa na ngurumo za radi kwa hivyo hatukuweza kuogelea baharani.

5. Leo hali ya hewa ni tulivu, nimefurahia kuwa.....upepo mkali kama ilivyokuwa jana.

6. _____kofia na miwani unapoenda kwenye ufukweni kunaweza kufanya uchomeke na jua kali. Sielewi swali hili wala sijui jibu lake kutoka kwa orodha. Kindly, check.

7. Tafadhali _____ na mwavuli utakapoenda kwenye Mlima Meru kesho kwa sababu utabiri wa hewa unaonyesha kutanyesha. Sijui jibu lake kutoka kwa orodha.

8. Leo.....joto sana utahitaji kuvaa mavazi mepesi

Sarufi: *Kuwa* vs. *Kuwa na*

The verb *-kuwa na* (to have) should not be confused with the verb *-kuwa* (to be), which you have also been using since the very beginning of this book:

Jina langu **ni** Amina.
*My name **is** Amina.*

Mimi **ni** mwanafunzi katika Chuo Kikuu cha Dar es Salaam.
*I **am** a student at the University of Dar es Salaam.*

Joseph na Shamilia **ni** Wamarekani.
*Joseph and Shamila **are** Americans.*

You will note that there is one unchanging form (*ni*) for the verb *-kuwa* in the present tense and that form does not even show the *-kuwa* root. The root does, however, appear in other tenses:

Matunda **ni** matamu.	The fruits **are** sweet.
Matunda **yalikuwa** matamu.	The fruits **were** sweet.
Matunda **yatakuwa** matamu.	The fruits **will be** sweet.



Zoezi C

Complete the following sentences with the appropriate form of *kuwa* or *kuwa na*.

1. Mama ha_____pesa za kutosha za kumnunulia mtoto viatu alivyovitaka.
2. Mtoto ame_____ mrefu haraka sana kuliko nilivyomwona mwaka jana.
3. Vitabu alivyowaletea watoto vili_____ na picha nzuri za kuashiria utamaduni wa kiafrika.
4. Mahindi yake haya_____ na rutuba ya kutosha kwa hivyo mazao hayakuwa mazuri mwaka huu.
5. Mvua ili_____ ya kupindukia mwaka huu kwa hivyo maharagwe yote yaliharibika.
6. Niliptomtembelea mama nili_____ nimembebea vitabu anavyopenda kusoma.
7. Mwalimu ali_____ hajafika shuleni nilipofika leo asubuhi.
8. Wageni wata_____ wamefika kufikia mwendo wa saa tano asubuhi.
9. Watoto wali_____ wamelala mama alipowasili kutoka kazini.
10. Ninatumai safari yangu ya kwanza ita_____ yakufana.

Zoezi D

Joseph is planning some activities for a three-day weekend with one of his classmates. Read the conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Joseph: Vipi Juma? Uhali gani?

Juma: Niko salama labda wewe.

Joseph: Niko salama pia. Je, unapanga kufanya nini siku hizi tatu za likizo?

Juma: Swali nzuri. Ninaona kuwa kutakuwa na mechi ya kandanda chuoni leo lakini ninaona hali ya hewa si nzuri sana. Inaonekana kutakuwa na mvua nyingi na ngurumo za radi kwa hivyo hatuwezi kufanya shughuli za nje.

Joseph: Ninapendekeza leo jioni tutazame filamu. Kuna filamu mpya ambayo inaonyeshwa katika sinema, ninafikiri utaipenda.

Juma: Bila shaka twende kwenye sinema leo.

Joseph: Leo, kesho na kesho kutwa hali ya hewa itakuwa vipi?

Juma: Leo jioni kunaweza kunyesha kwa kuwa kuna upepo mkali. Kesho mvua haitanyesha lakini kutakuwa na mawingu na upepo mkali. Kwa hivyo hatuwezi kwenda pwani leo.Kesho kutwa vilevile kutakuwa na mvua nyepesi, mawingu na vipindi vichache vya mvua.

Joseph: Kweli huu ni msimu wa masika. Unafikiri tutaweza kuwa na burudani gani siku ya jumamosi na jumapili?

Juma: Siku ya Jumamosi tutaweza kwenda kuhudhuria sherehe za kitaifa katika uwanja wa michezo waKigoma. Kutakuwa na burudani safi katika sherehe hiyo, nyimbo, dansi, michezo ya kuigiza na kadhalika.

Joseph: Hilo ni wazo nzuri sana. Ninatumai nitajifunza mengi kuhusu historia ya Tanzania?

Juma: Bila shaka. Kisha siku ya jumapili tutaweza kuzuru makavazi ya Arusha Declaration. Sipendi msimu wa masika kwa sababu huwa siwezi kufanya vitu vingi. Pia sipendi baridi na hali ya hewa yenye mawingu mengi bila jua.

Joseph: Mimi ninapenda msimu wa majira gani? kwa sababu sipendi joto. Hupenda pia kufanya vitu vingi ndani. Huwa mbunifu. Kwa hivyo tuna shughuli za kufanya likizo hii. Tutaonana baadaye.

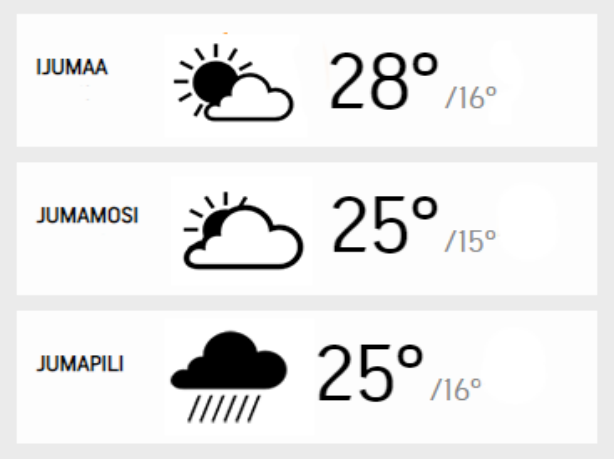
Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Juma na Joseph wana likizo ya siku ngapi?
2. Je, Juma na Joseph watacheza kandanda leo?
3. Hali ya hewa iko vipi leo?
4. Hali ya hewa itakuwaje kesho?

5. Juma na Joseph watafanya nini siku ya Jumamosi?
6. Juma na Joseph watanya nini siku ya Jumapili?
7. Joseph anapenda majira gani?
8. Juma anapenda majira gani?

Zoezi E

You and a friend are planning to go on a hike this weekend and need to figure out the best day to go. Look at the weather forecast and discuss your options. As time permits you might also discuss what clothing you should wear and any food or drinks that you might bring along.



Zoezi F

Joseph is planning to go out to support Mr. Bakari who is doing some field work activities. They want to go and interview a few teachers in a local primary school in the afternoon. Joseph calls Mr. Bakari early in the morning to check on his plans for the day. Read their conversation below.

Joseph: Shikamoo mwalimu Bakari. Uhali gani?

Bakari: Marahaba Joseph. Niko salama na wewe je?

Joseph: Niko salama. Samahani nimekupigia simu mapema sana. Je, nimekuamsha?

Bakari: Hamna neno.

Joseph: Ningependa kukumbusha kuwa tuna miadi leo ya kufanya mahojiano katika shule ya msingi ya Maua. Je, ungependa tuondoke saa ngapi?

Bakari: Asante sana kwa kunikumbusha. Je, hali ya anga namna gani leo? Tunahitaji kufanya mahojiano na kuchukua video uwanjani.

Joseph: Wacha niangalie darubini ya hali ya hewa. Nipe dakika moja. Inaonekana leo kuna vipindi vya jua na mawingu kiasi saa za asubuhi. Kutakuwa na mvua nyingi sana na ngurumo za radi mwendo wa alasiri. Ninafikiri itakuwa vema twende saa za asubuhi.

Bakari: Ninakubaliana na mawazo yako. Ni vema tumalize shughuli za mahojiano kabla ya mvua kunyesha. Kwa hivyo tunaweza kuondoka kwenye idara saa tatu kamili asubuhi.

Joseph: Ndiyo nitakuwa ofisini mwako saa tatu asubuhi. Hakikisha umebeba mikoba ya kubebea vifaa vya utafiti. Lazima tuvizuie kupata maji.

Bakari: Bila shaka nitabeba. Tuonane hivi karibuni inshallah.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo

1. Joseph na Bakari wana mipango gani leo?
2. Hali ya anga namnaa gani leo?
3. Bakari na Joseph wanapanga kufanya mahojiano yao saa ngapi?
4. Joseph anahitaji kubeba vifaa gani?
5. Joseph na Bakari wataondoka saa ngapi?



Zoezi G

You are calling one of your friends who lives in East Africa to check in. By coincidence, each of you is feeling a bit sick because of the weather where you are. Discuss the weather and the symptoms that you have.



Zoezi H

Read the weather forecast below and answer the questions that follow.

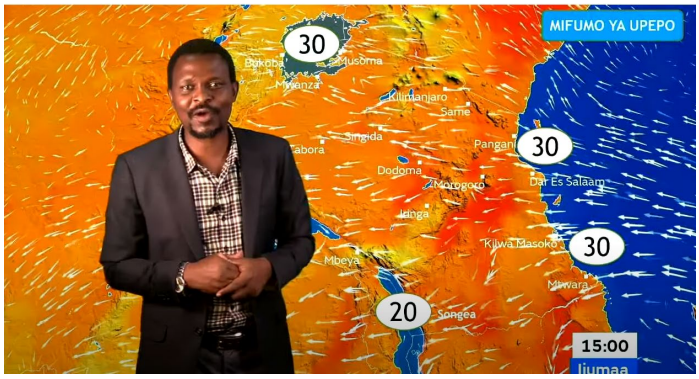
Hali ya hewa wiki hii ni nzuri. Kutoka Ijumaa hadi siku ya Jumatatu kutakuwa na mawingu kiasi na vipindi vya jua. Hali joto ya juu itakuwa ishirini na sita na nyuzi za chini za joto zitakuwa kumi na tatu. Siku ya Jumanne na Jumatano kutakuwa na mawingu na mvua itanyesha. Alhamisi na ijumaa vile vile kutakuwa na mawingu kiasi na vipindi vya jua. Upepo utavuma ikasi cha kilomita ishirini na tatu kwa saa. Unyevu utakuwa asilimia sitini na mbili na kuna uwezekano wa mvua kunyesha kwa asilimia 20%.

Eleza iwapo ni kweli au sikweli na utoe sababu kwa nini unachagua jibu lako.

1. Wiki hii hali ya hewa si nzuri kwa sababu kuna jua kali sana.
2. Kutoka Jumanne hadi Ijumaa kutakuwa na mawingu mengi na vipindi vya jua.
3. Mvua itanyesha siku ya Jumapili na Jumatatu.
4. Upepo utavuma kwa kiasi cha kilomita ishirini na tatu kwa saa.
5. Kutakuwa na joto kali sana kila siku.

Zoezi I

Watch the weather forecast from Meteo Tanzania and answer the questions that follow.

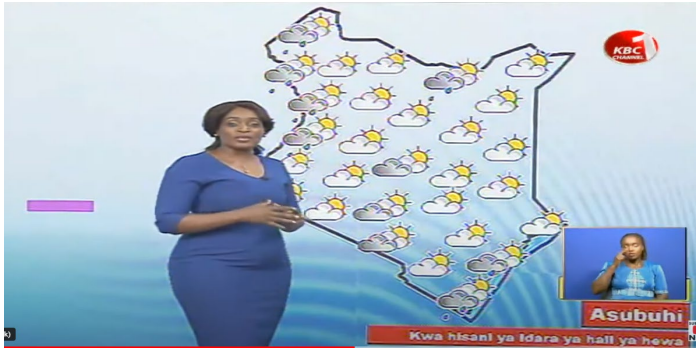


tinyurl.com/42zttpsw

1. Utabiri huu wa hali ya hewa ni wa kutoka saa ngapi hadi saa ngapi?
2. Upepo utavuma kiasi cha kilomita 30 katika sehemu gani?
3. Hali ya bahari inatarajiwa kuwa vipi?
4. Viwango vya joto vya juu zaidi vinatarajiwa katika maeneo gani?
5. Mvua inatarajiwa katika sehemu gani?
6. Ni maeneo yapi yanatarajiwa kuwa makavu?

Zoezi J

Listen to the weather forecast from KBC Channel 1 and write a paragraph summarizing what you hear. How is the weather in Nairobi different from the current weather in your town?



tinyurl.com/2hkp7tbv

Cultural Explorations

Before meteorological innovations such as satellite technology, African traditional rainmakers were a great resource in the community as they were believed to have mystical power to forecast the weather, make rain fall such as during drought, and stop rain in case of flooding or social needs. Swahili people living in rural areas are mainly engaged in agriculture so the rainmaker would use herbs and/or special stones to perform rituals to make rain for the community. Some communities also engaged in rainmaking dances and praying in the shrines especially if there was drought. In forecasting, rainmakers also observed the natural environment such as wind speed and direction, shape of clouds, behavior of some bird species, leaves of certain indigenous trees, movements of ants, termites, white butterflies, and some animals.

Having reliable rainmakers was important as they would inform their community that the rainy season was approaching so that they could prepare the land for planting. They could also identify heavy rains by looking at the emergence of a lot of safari ants, running of cattle and also strong winds, and advise those who lived down the hills to vacate so as to avoid being carried away by floods. Given the importance of ceremonies in the community, the rainmakers' services were also highly sought in some communities during burials and weddings so that they could stop the rain until the event was completed.

Even nowadays, the traditional weather forecasters in various countries where Swahili is spoken, such as the rainmakers of Nganyi in Western Kenya, have continued giving weather forecasts in local radio stations alongside the scientific forecast from meteorological departments. With the emerging challenge of climate change and food insecurity, there has been a push by the environmental scholars to document the practices of traditional rainmakers so that modern meteorological science can work together with traditional approaches.

To understand more about traditional rainmakers watch the videos below.

Traditional Rain Makers
CGTN Africa

tinyurl.com/bdfutjk8

The Rainmakers of Nganyi
The Sustainability Institure

tinyurl.com/44zfjns3

Cultural Reflection

1. How do traditional practices of other communities compare with the rainmaking in African societies? Does your community have practice to make rain or to find water?
2. Do you think rainmakers are reliable in weather forecasting? Please explain your argument.
3. Do you think that rainmakers could help to mitigate the effects of climate change in the 21st century?



Zoezi K

As Tanzania is very close to the equator, there is not a lot of seasonal variation in terms of weather. Shamila describes the winter (*kipupwe*) and fall (*maanguko*) back home in the U.S. to her host mother.

Farida: Je, hali ya hewa ya Marekani ni sawa na ya Afrika Mashariki?

Shamila: Kuna tofauti sana katika hali ya hewa ya Afrika Mashariki na ya Marekani. Japo, kuna maeneo katika Marekani ambayo yana hali ya hewa ya kitropiki ambayo inakaribiana sana na Afrika Mashariki. Nitaangazia tofauti kubwa zilizopo kwenye hali ya hewa kati ya maeneo haya mawili. Kwanza, kuna misimu mbali mbali.

Farida: Misimu ipi? Hapa Afrika Mashariki kuna misimu miwili tu. Msimu wa masika na msimu wa joto/au kiangazi.

Shamila: Marekani kuna misimu minne. Watu huvaa mavazi tofauti katika misimu tofauti kwa hivyo inawabidi wanunue nguo nyingi. . Wakati wa msimu wa baridi, watu huvaa nguo nzitonzito lakini wakati wa msimu wa kiangazi, huwa ni bora kuvaa nguo nyepesi. Mavazi kama kaptula, fulana na tisheti huvaliwa msimu wa joto. Wakati wa msimu wa baridi, suruali ndefu za aina ya jinsi, shati, sweta na koti huvaliwa na watu wengi lakini kuna wengine ambao huvaa suti na koti wakienda ofisini.

Farida: Hapa Afrika Mashariki, watu hawahitaji kubadilisha mavazi sana kulingana na msimu. Je, mimea huathiriwa na hali ya hewa wakati wa misimu hii?

Shamila: Ndiyo, misimu hii inaathiri ukuaji wa mimea. Msimu wa baridi ni kipindi ambacho kuna baridi kali sana.

Farida: Mimea hukua kukiwa na baridi kali?

Shamila: Mimea mingi haikuwi wakati huu Marekani. Nyuzi za joto mara nyingi huwa chini ya sufuri katika sehemu nyingi. Msimu huu una vipindi vifupi vya jua.

Farida: Je, huu ndio msimu ambao kuna theluji?

Shamila: Ndiyo. Maeneo mengi Marekani hupata theluji. Msimu mwingine ni msimu wa maanguko ambao huja kabla ya msimu wa baridi kutoka mwezi wa Septemba hadi mwezi wa Novemba. Viwango vya joto

hupungua wakati huu na miti pia hupoteza majani yake. Ni msimu wa kupendeza sana kwa sababu matawi ya miti hubadili rangi kabla ya kuanguka. Japo kuna kazi nyingi sana ya kuondoa matawi kwenye kwenye ua.

Farida: Kwa, hivyo viwango vya baridi katika msimu huu si kama msimu wa baridi?

Shamila: Hapana. Katika msimu huu hakuna baridi kali. Msimu mwingine ni msimu wa machipuo wakati ambao baridi inapungua kabisa na mimea huanza kuchipuka tena. Maua huota na hupendeza sana wakati huu. Hakuna baridi wakati. Huwa na vipindi virefu vya joto. . Ninapenda msimu huu zaidi kwa sababu mimi hupenda kufanya burudani nje ya nyumba na pia ninapenda kwenda ufukweni kuogelea na kufanya michezo mingine ya maji. Msimu wa mwisho ambao nina upenda zaidi ni msimu wa kianganzi ijapo viwango vya joto wakati mwingine huwa juu zaidi.

Farida: Je, viwango vya joto ni sawa na huku Afrika Mashariki?

Shamila: La hasha, viwango vya joto vya juu zaidi sifikiri unaweza kuvilinganisha na vya Marekani. Huwa kuna joto kali na unyefu.

Farida: Kwa kweli hali ya hewa ya Marekani na Afrika Mashariki ni tofauti sana.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Marekani kuna misimu mingapi?
2. Katika Afrika Mashariki kuna misimu mingapi?
3. Kati ya Marekani na Afrika Mashariki, ni wapi kuna viwango vya joto chini zaidi?
4. Kwa nini watu hununua nguo mara nyingi zaidi Marekani kuliko Afrika Mashariki?
5. Msimu wa Baridihuwa vipi Marekani?
6. Watu huvaa mavazi gani wakati wa msimu wa baridi nchini Marekani?
7. Msimu wa maanguko huwa vipi Marekani?
8. Msimu wa machipuo huwa vipi Marekani?
9. Shamila anapenda msimu gani Zaidi, Na kwa nini?
10. Ni mavazi gani yanayovaliwa na wamarekani msimu wa joto?

Zoezi L

Joseph talks to his host family's son about the activities that are typical in the United States in the fall (*maanguko*) and the spring (*machipuo*).

Juma: Vipi Joseph? Umesema kuwa kuna misimu mbalimbali Marekani?

Joseph: Ndiyo, hali ya hewa katika nchi ya Marekani na nchi za Uropa ni tofauti sana na nchi za Afrika Mashariki. Hasa Marekani, kuna msimu wa kiangazi/joto, msimu wa maanguko, msimu wa baridi na machipuo. Kwa hivyo kuna misimu minne kwa jumla.

Juma: Kweli kuna mabadiliko mengi katika hali ya anga. Je, wewe unapenda msimu gani?

Joseph: Mimi hupenda msimu wa maanguko zaidi. Wakati huu hakuna baridi kali na pia hakuna joto kali. Mimi sipendi baridi kali na pia sipendi joto jingi.

Juma: Ninaona uko kama mimi. Pia sipendi baridi kali wala joto jingi. Ninafikiri kama ningekuwa ninaishi Marekani ningependa msimu wa machipuo. Je, wewe unapenda kufanya shughuli gani msimu huu wa machipuo?

Joseph: Ninapenda kutembea kwenye bustani na kucheza soka pamoja na rafiki zangu. Hali ya anga huwa nzuri sana na miti huwa na maua maridadi.

Juma: Je, huu ndio msimu ambao hali ya anga ni nzuri au kuna msimu mwingine?

Joseph: Msimu wa maanguko si mbaya pia. Kwa sababu ya hali nzuri ya hewa. Mimi hupenda kufanya vitu vingi vya starehe nje. Mimi hupenda kwenda msituni kuwinda, kukwea milima, kutembea na kukimbia nje. Mimi huandaa ratiba ya vitu vingi vya kufanya wakati huu. Je, wewe hufanya shughuli gani kwa kawaida msimu huu?

Joseph: Mimi na familia yangu hupenda kufanya vitu vingi pamoja kama desturi yetu. Kwa sababu sisi tuna bustani la matofaa, sisi hushiriki katika shughuli za kuvuna matofaa, kuyapima, na kuyasafirisha kwenye maduka mbalimbali.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Kuna tofauti gani katika ya hali ya anga Marekani na Afrika Mashariki?
2. Joseph anapenda msimu gani, na kwa nini?
3. Kama Juma angekuwa anaishi Marekani, angekuwa anapenda msimu gani?
4. Joseph hufanya shughuli gani msimu wa machipuo?
5. Joseph hupenda kufanya nini msimu wa maanguko?
6. Juma na familia yake wana desturi ya kufanya nini pamoja?



Zoezi M

Joseph's classmate Fola, who is from Nigeria, wants to know what activities Joseph engages in during the spring when he is back home. He also shares information about the rainy season in Nigeria with Joseph. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Joseph: Ninaona kuna mvua nyingi msimu huu. Je, katika Nchi yako hali ya hewa iko vipi sasa?

Fola: Sasa pia ni msimu wa mvua katika Nigeria ya kati sehemu ninayo toka. Msimu wa mvua huanza mwezi wa nne hadi mwezi wa tisa.

Joseph: Je, watu wengi hufanya shughuli gani msimu huu wa mvua? Ninaona hapa tunakaa ndani kwa muda mrefu.

Fola: Mimi ninapenda msimu huu wa masika kwa sababu mvua huwasaidia wakulima kwa kuipa maji mimea. Mimi ninapenda kufanya kazi za shambani kama vile kupanda, kupalilia, kulima, na kuitunza mimea . Wazazi wangu walikuwa na shamba kubwa sana na nilitumia muda mrefu sana kuwasaidia na shughuli za shambani. Ninapenda msimu wa mvua kwa sababu mandhari habadilika na kuwa ya kijani kila mahali na kila mtu hufurahia kukuza vyakula kwa mahitaji yao. Je, wewe unapenda msimu huu wa masika?

Joseph: Mimi sipendi sana majira ya masika kwa sababu kuna baridi nyingi na pia siwezi kufanya vitu vingi nje. Mimi ninapenda kipindi ambacho hakuna mvua nyingi na pia hakuna joto jingi.

Fola: Ninakuelewa utavumilia msimu huu wa masika. Je, kule marekani wewe unapenda msimu upi?

Joseph: Mimi ninapenda msimu wa machipuo. Huu ni msimu unaoanza baada ya msimu wa baridi na kabla ya msimu wa kiangazi. Machipuo ina maana kuwa ni wakati ambao mimea inaanza kuchipuka. Wakati huu joto huongezeka. Watu wengi huwacha kuvaa nguo nzito za baridi. Katika Uropa na pia Marekani wakulima wengi hutayarisha mashamba yao na hupanda mazao ya shambani. Familia yangu inaishi mjini kwa hivyo msimu huu huwa hatuna shughuli za ukulima. Lakini babu yangu huwa na shughuli nyingi sana kwa sababu ana shamba kubwa sana.

Fola: Kwa hivyo msimu huu mimea huchipuka au ile iliyopandwa hukua.

Joseph: Ndiyo. Pia wanyama wengi hutoka katika hali ya mafichoni ambayo wao huingia katika msimu wa baridi. Wanyama wengi huanza shughuli za kuuzaana wakati huu kwa sababu ya hali joto ya juu wakati huu. Ninapenda wakati huu kwa sababu unapata kuwa kuna wanyama wengi nje na pia mazingira huwa ya kupendeza.

Fola: Je, wewe hupenda kufanya nini msimu huu?

Joseph: Kwa sababu mimi huenda kufanya shughuli za nje, mimi hupenda kuendesha baiskeli. Wakati huu kuna mashindano mengi ya uendeshajiwa baisikeli. Mimi hupenda kushiriki katika mashindano haya. Nimewahi kushiriki kwenye mashindano ya kuendesha baisikeli

ya kilomita mia moja. Wakati huu mimi huenda kukwea milima, kupiga kambi, na kutembelea vivutio ambavyo vina shughuli nyingi za nje.

Fola: Kweli kuna vitu vingi vya kufana na kufanya.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Joseph na Fola wanapenda msimu gani?
2. Kwa nini Joseph hapendi msimu wa masika?
3. Fola hufanya shughuli gani msimu wa baridi?
4. Kwa nini Fola anapenda shughuli za msimu wa baridi?
5. Joseph hufanya shughuli gani msimu wa machipuo?
6. Kuna mabadiliko gani ya mandhari katika msimu wa machipuo?
7. Wanyama hufanya nini katika msimu wa machipuo?



Zoezi N

Interview your partner to find out what their favorite season was while growing up. Find out what the weather was like where they lived, the kinds of clothing they typically wore, and the activities they liked to do. As time allows, find out if they have changed their favorite seasons and the activites they do as they have gotten older or moved to a different location.



Zoezi O

Prepare a presentation about a dream vacation spot that you would like to visit. Be sure to mention what the weather is like, what clothes you would need to pack, specific foods that you might be able to have, souvenirs that you would like to buy, and how you would occupy yourself during the day and at night.

Key Vocabulary

Adjectives

baridi cold
chini low (with regard to temperature)
joto warm
juu high (with regard to temperature)
kali extreme (with regard to temperature)
nyingi a lot

Nouns

barafu ice
dhoruba storm
halijoto temperature
istiwai/ikweta equator
jua sun
tufani heavy storm
kimbunga hurricane; swirling winds
manyunyu; rasharasha light drizzle
mawimbi kasi air waves; gusts
mvua rain
mwezi moon
ngurumo za radi thunderstorm
nyota stars
radi thunder
sayari planet
theluji snow
ukungu fog
umande dew
umeme lightning
mvuke humidity
upepo wind
upinde wa mvua rainbow
wingu/mawingi cloud/clouds

Phrases

Grinwichi Greenwich Meridian
Hali ya hewa leo ni nzuri. The weather is nice today.
Kuna tahadhari kuhusu hali ya hewa leo. There is a weather advisory today.
kupatwa kwa jua solar eclipse
kupatwa kwa mwezi lunar eclipse
Kuwa mwangalifu kuhusu hali ya hewa leo. Be careful about the weather today.
Leo hakuna mvua. There is no rain today.
Leo hakuna upepo. Today it is not windy.
Leo hali ya hewani mbaya. Today the weather is bad.
Leo kuna baridi kali. It is too cold today.
Leo kuna joto kali. It is too hot today.
longitudo/mistari ya latitudo longitude/latitude lines
Ninapenda hali ya hewa leo. I like the weather today.
Sipendi hali ya hewa leo. I do not like the weather today.
Tropiki ya Kansa Tropic of Cancer
Tropiki ya Kaprikoni Tropic of Capricorn
viwango vya baridi levels of cold temperatures
viwango vya joto levels of warm temperatures

6.4 Sherehe na Likizo

Zoezi A

Read the wedding invitation below and determine whether the statements that follow are true or false. If the statement is false, modify it as needed to make it true.



Familia ya
Bwana na Bibi
Deo Mamlaka
na Bwana.na Bibi
Musa Hodari wanayo furaha
kuwaalika Prof/Dk/Mh/Bwana
na Bibi Musa kwenye Harusi
ya watoto wao wapendwa

Hidaya na Fikirini.

Ibada ya ndoa itakuwa kwenye kanisa la Calvary Temple Arusha 17/10/23, saa 4.00 hadi 6:00 mchana.

Kisha kutakuwa na sherehe kwenye Bustani ya Ngare Sero Mountain Lodge, Arusha, Saa 8:00 hadi 12:00 jioni Tunatanguliza shukrani zetu za dhati.

Hidaya na Fikirini.

1. Fikirini na Hidaya ni wapenzi na ni watoto wao Bwana Mamlaka na Bwana Musa.
2. Ibada ya ndoa ya maarusi itakuwa kwenye bustani ya Ngare Sero.
3. Kwenye bustani wageni na maarusi watatumbuizwa na muziki wa klasiki, bongo na rock.
4. Watu watacheza densi na kula vyakula tofauti kwenye sherehe ya harusi.

5. Ibada ya ndoa itafanyika baada ya sherehe itakayokuwa kwenye bustani ya Ngare Sero.



Zoezi B

Listen to the passage about wedding customs and answer the questions that follow.

1. Waswahili wanasherehekea arusi kwa muda gani?
2. Wanawake hufanya nini nyumbani mwa Bwana arusi iwapo Bi arusi ni bikira?
3. Ubikira kwa Bi harusi hudhihirisha nini?
4. Kukata na kulishana keki ina ishara gani kwenye jamii ya Waswahili?
5. Bi arusi na bwana arusi hufanya nini baada ya siku saba kufutia kufunga ndoa?



Zoezi C

Read Shamila's and Bibi Farida's conversation about plans for the wedding next weekend. and answer the questions that follow.

Shamila: Habari za jioni Bi. Farida?

Farida: Salama sana. Na wewe je?

Shamila: Mimi niko salama. Ninaona unapumzika kwa kusoma.

Farida: La hata sisomi. Huu ni mwaliko wa harusi kutoka kwa rafiki yangu Aisha. Aisha anaishi katika mji wa Songoma. Binti yake anaolewa.

Shamila: Hongera sana kwa binti ya Bi. Aisha. Je, harusi itakuwa lini?

Farida: Harusi iatuka jumamosi ijayo katika jiji la Arusha. Wakwe wa Aisha wanatoka Arusha kwa hivyo harusi itakuwa mjini Arusha katika kanisa la Calvary Temple. Ningependa kwenda na wewe kwa harusi hii.

Shamila: Bila shaka mimi ningependa kwenda kwa harusi hiyo. Ningependa kushuhudia desturi za harusi katika eneo la Afrika mashariki.

Farida: Safi kabisa. Sherehe ya harusi itaanza mwendo wa saa nne pale kanisani kwa hivyo tutaondoka hapa nyumbani mwendo wa saa mbili asubuhi.

Shamila: Sawa mama. Je, tunahitaji kupeleka chochote?

Farida: Kama desturi, kwa sababu mimi ni rafiki wa karibu sana wa Aisha na binti yake ni kama binti yangu, nimeandaa zawadi ambayo tutampelekea. Nimeandaa vyombo vichache vya nyumbani kama vile

bilauri, vikombe, sahani, mtungi wa gesi, jiko la kupika na bahasha ya pesa.

Shamila: Zawadi tele kwa maharusi hao. Watafurahia kweli. Je, tunahitaji kufanya maandalizi gani mengine?

Farida: Hamna maandalizi mengi ya kufanya kwa sababu sisi tumealikwa kama wageni. Tutajipodoa na kuvaa mavazi ya kupendeza. Kisha twende. Fundi wangu wa nguo atakuja kesho jioni kutupima kisha atatushonea mavazi ya vitenge.

Shamila: Asante sana Bi. Farida. Ninatazamia sana kuhudhuria sherehe hiyo.

Farida: Nina matumaini kuwa itakuwa ya kufana sana. Kutakuwa na muziki wa Bongo na muziki wa kitamaduni. Kwa hivyo jiandae kucheza dansi. Pia katika sherehe zetu huwa na vipochopocho vingi. Vyakula maalum katika sherehe ni kama pilau, nyama choma, chapati, tende, na kadhalika.

Shamila: Ninafurahia sana utamaduni huu. Niko tayari kwenda kwa harusi hiyo.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Farida amealikwa kwa sherehe ya harusi na nani?
2. Sherehe ya harusi itakuwa siku gani?
3. Je, Shamila anapanga kuhudhuria sherehe hiyo?
4. Bi. Farida ameandalia maharusi zawadi gani?
5. Kwa nini Farida anatarajia kuwa sherehe itakuwa ya kufana sana?
6. Unafikiri baada ya ibada ya ndoa ni nini kitafanyika?

Zoezi D

Shamila noticed that people were wearing different traditional clothes, and on their way from the wedding, she engaged in a discussion with her host mother about the clothing culture in Tanzania. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Shamila: Harusi ilikuwa nzuri sana na niliona kuwa watu wanavaa mavazi ya kitamaduni tofauti tofauti. Mtindo wa mavazi mijini na vijijini ni tofauti sana. Pia ni tofauti kidogo na mitindo ya mavazi katika jamii yangu.

Farida: Kweli kabisa. Kuna tofauti ya mtindo ya mavazi mjini na vijijini na pia kulingana na jamii na dini. Umeona kuwa wanawake wa dini ya kiisilamu huvalia buibui na kanzu ndefu ambalo linasitiri mwili wote. Wengine wanatumia vazi la kanga kama buibui. Mavazi haya ni kulingana na maadili ya dini yao. Wanaume vilevile wanavalia kanzu na barghasia kichwani. Katika maeneo ambayo wakaazi wengi wanashiriki kwenye dini ya Kiisilamu hata watu wageni wanastahili kuvaa kama

wenyeji kuonyesha heshima kwa tamaduni zao na dini ya kiisilamu. Iwapo wanawake hawavalii kanzu, wanastahili kuvalia sketi ndefu na blauzi ya mikono mirefu inayositiri mwili wote na kufunika nywele kwa kitambaa au buibui.

Shamila: Asante sana kwa maelezo hayo ya kina. Ninakubaliana nawe kuwa ni muhimu kuheshimu desturi na dini za watu wengine. Nina mavazi haya tayari wakati tutakapo safiri na mama Farida kwenda kijijini kukutana na familia yake. Je, kuna tofauti zingine za mavazi kati ya watu wa mjini na vijijini?

Farida: Kama unavyoona hapa jini Dar es Salaam, kuna mitindo mbalimbali ya mavazi ya kisasa. Hii inatokana na athari ya utandawazi. Katika tamaduni za babu zetu wanawake walisalia kuvaa gauni, sketi ndefu au nguo ambazo zilisitiri mwili wote. Lakini sasa unaona mavazi ya aina mbalimbali ya wanawake ambao wanavaa suruali ndefu au fupi, gauni ndefu au fupi, vitenge na mitindo rasmi na ile isiyo rasmi kutoka kwa nchi zingine.

Shamila: Je, mitindo ya wanaume pia imebadilika?

Farida: Ndiyo. Kuna tofauti ya mtindo ya mavazi ya miaka themanini, tisini na ilivyo sasa hasa baada ya mwaka wa elfu mbili. Kwa mfano suti za enzi zile zilikuwa kubwa lakini hivi sasa suti zinashonwa za kutosha. Kuna aina nyingi za viatu sasa tofauti na enzi za zamani.

Shamila: Na mitindo ya mavazi vijini iko je?

Farida: Vijijini , mavazi yanaandamana na jamii. Kwa mfano jamii ya wamasaai imezingatia mila zao na mavazi yao yakitamaduni. Wao hutumia shuka ambazo wanazifunga kwenye kiuno na sehemu ya juu ya mabega. Wao pia hutumuia mapambo mengi ya shanga kulingana na umri wa mtu. Mapambo haya yanavaliwa kwa shingo au mikono. Wao huvaa vipuli kwenye masikio na vishaufu kwenye midomo. Pia wao hutengeneza viatu vyao kwa kutumia magurudumu ya gari. Viatu hivi hudumu kwa muda mrefu.

Shamila: Na wanawake wamasaai huvalia vipi?

Farida: Wanawake wakimasaai huvalia gauni za kitamaduni ambazo huwa zenye rangi za kung'aa. Mara nyingi huwa za rangi nyekundu. Pia hao huvalia mapambo mengi ya shanga. Katika utamaduni wao sanaa ya kutengeneza mapambo ni kitu ambacho wanawake wengi hujifunza wakiwa na umri mdogo.

Shamila: Je, watu katika jamii zingine huvalia vipi?

Farida: Katika vijiji vingi watu wengi bado wanazingatia itikadi za zamani. Mavazi ya wanawake ni marefu yanayositiri mwili wote bila kubana mwili sana. Wanaume pia wanavaa mavazi ya kawaida. Mara nyingi huwa suruali ndefu, shati au tishati, na kanzu. Wanafunzi katika shule za msingi na za sekondari wanavaa sare za shule. Wafanyakazi wengine kwa mfano nesi na ofisi zingine pia wanavaa sare zao rasmi za kazi.

Shamila: Asante sana kwa kunielimisha kuhusu utamaduni wako. Ninafurahia kuelewa utamaduni wako zaidi.

Farida: Bila shaka tutazungumza zaidi. Ningependa kujua mitindo ya mavazi katika jamii yako. Utahitaji kununua vazi la kitenge ili uvae utakapohudhuria harusi nyingine. Utapendeza sana! Itakuwa bora pia kununua kanga kwa matumizi ya nyumbani au kuvaa kwenye sherehe mbalimbali.

Shamila: Asante sana kwa ushauri wako. Ningependa nishonewe kitenge maridadi wikendi hii. Pia, nitaenda sokoni kununua kanga.

Farida: Mipango mizuri hiyo. Unafahamu umuhimu wa kanga kwa wanawake?

Shamila: Sijui sana, lakini nitasoma zaidi kuhusu asili na matumizi ya kanga katika jamii ya Waswahili.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Je, mitindo ya mavazi mjini na vijini Tanzania ni sawa? Kwa nini?
2. Je, wewe ukienda katika maeneo ya dini ya Kiisilamu Tanzania utavaa mavazi gani?
3. Wanaume na wanawake katika jamii ya wamaasai huvaa mavazi gani?
4. Wanaume na wanawake katika jamii ya wamaasai huvaa mapambo gani?
5. Watu wengi vijijini Tanzania huvaa vipi?
6. Kuna tofauti gani katika mitindo ya mavazi katika Jamii ya Farida na yako?
7. Kuna usawa gani katika mitindo ya mavazi katika jamii ya Amina na yako?
8. Je, wanafunzi wa shule za msingi na shule za sekondari katika jamii yako huvaa sare ya shule? Kwa nini?
9. Jamii ya wamaasai wanapenda nguo za rangi gani?
10. Je, utandawazi umeathiri mitindo ya mavazi katika jamii yako? Toa maelezo.

Zoezi E

Read the article about the *kanga* and answer the questions that follow.

Kanga ni vazi ambalo ni maarufu katika Afrika Mashariki. Asili ya vazi hili ni Zanzibar, na lilianzishwa kutokana na ushawishi wa wareno ambapo kanga ya kwanza iliyochapishwa ilikuwa kanga yenye rangi nyeusi na nyeupe mwaka wa elfu moja mia nane na sita. Jina la kanga hiyo lilijulikana kama khanga Zhamira na baadaye vazi hilo likaendelea kukua katika ubunifu mbalimbali. Vazi hili huitwa leso kwenye nchi ya Kenya na Kanga au Khanga nchini Tanzania.

Kanga ni vazi ambalo huvaliwa maeneo mbalimbali ya Afrika Mashariki na baadhi ya maeneo ya Afrika ya Kati. Vazi la kanga linatumika zaidi katika maeneo ya pwani kama Dar es Salaam, Mombasa, na Zanzibar. Vazi hili ni muhimu kwa utamaduni wa Waswahili na lina historia ndefu.



Kanga ina uhusiano mkubwa na sanaa kutokana na maandishi yanayoandikwa kwenye kanga, michoro na rangi zinazotumika. Jina kanga linatokana na rangi asili ya vitonetone vyeupe na mwili mweusi iliyokuwa ikitumika kutengeneza leso kwa kuwa hizo rangi zinafanana na rangi za ndege anayeitwa kanga. Kwa hivyo wanawake wazanzibari waliokuwa wakizitumia leso hizo katika shughuli tofauti tofauti hasa kuswali walilibandika vazi hilo jina la kanga. Kwa ufupi, kanga ina thamani kubwa sana kwa mwanamke mswahili kutokana na rangi zake zinazofanya mwanamke apendeze lakini pia zina maana halisi kwa wanazozitumia.

Kanga huwa na sehemu tatu kwa hivyo ni vazi lenye ubunifu mkubwa, lenye urembo na utamaduni wa wavaaji. Pindo ni sehemu ambayo huwa imezunguka kanga yote. Mji ni sehemu ya pili na huwa ndani ya pindo. Sehemu ya Yahya ni sehemu ya tatu ambayo ni jina la kanga au ujumbe ulioandikwa kwenye kanga. Sehemu hii ni muhimu sana kwa kuwa kihistoria kanga ilitumika kama njia ya mawasiliano kutokana na mtindo wake wa kuwa na ujumbe kama methali na pia misemo na maneno yenye mafumbo yaliyokuwa na ishara tofauti.



Maandishi ya asili mwanzoni mwa Karne ya Ishirni yalikuwa ya lugha ya Kiarabu lakini baada ya kuongezeka kwa watumiaji wa Kanga nje ya sehemu za pwani hadi kwenye Afrika Mashariki yote, alphabeti za kilatini zilianza kutumika. Mvaaji wa kanga alikuwa akichangua kanga atakayoivaa kulingana na ujumbe aliopenda kupitisha kwa jamii yake. Kwa mfano kuna kanga ya kisutu ya Bi. Arusi inayotumika kufunika kitanda siku Bi. Arusi anapoolewa. Aina hii ya kanga huwa na maandishi gani? Maandishi yalikuwa na mafumbo na yaliashiria ujumbe ambao mvaaji alitaka kuashiria jamii yake bila kutumia mazungumzo.

Kwa kawaida, wasichana na wanawake ndio wanaovaa kanga. Kwa kuwa kanga hutumika sana na waisilamu, wanawake wanapaswa kujifunika kuanzia kwenye kifua hadi sehemu ya miguu. Kanga nyingine inapaswa kufunika sehemu ya kichwa hadi kwenye mabega. Kitamaduni, wanaume hawafai kuvaa kanga nje ya nyumba au uani , mbele ya wageni au watoto wakubwa. Inaruhusiwa mwanamume kutumia kanga anapokuwa tu na mke wake chumbani mwao mwa kulala. Lakini wanaume wamaasai hhujifunga kanga nje ya nyumba au wanaume wanapoenda jandoni.

Utalii umefanya matumizi ya kitamaduni ya kanga kuwa tofauti kidogo. Siku hizi watu wanaponunua kitambaa cha kanga wanakikata na kukitumia kwa shughuli tofauti kama kutengeneza kofia, mkoba, shati, kubandika kwenye ukuta wa nyumba kwa ajili ya umaridadi na kadhalika. Waswahili na watu wa Afrika Mashariki kwa jumla hutumia kanga kwenye sherehe tofauti. Kwa mfano, kanga inatumika kwenye arusi, kufunika jeneza ya mwanamke wakati wa mazishi, kumtumia mtu ili kupitisha ujumbe wa busara au ushauri fulani , katika nyumba kama mapambo hasa kutandika juu ya meza, au huvaliwa nyumbani kwa mfano mtu anapoenda bafuni au kujipangusa nayo jinsi inayotumika taulo. . Pia kanga huvaliwa juu ya nguo zingine na wanawake ili kujisitiri, au kubeba watoto. Matumizi ya kanga pia yameingia kwenye siasa, ambapo zinatumika kusherehekea matukio ya kisiasa. . Bila shaka kanga ni vazi muhimu kiuchumi, kiutamaduni, kisiasa na matumizi yake na ubunifu kwenye watumiaji utaendelea kukua katika siku zijazo kwenye maeneo ya Afrika Mashariki.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Vazi la kanga linatumika zaidi katika sehemu gani ?
2. Katika nchi ya Kenya, kanga inajulikana kwa jina gani?
3. Ni jambo gani lilifanya maandishi ya kanga yabadilike kutoka kwa kiarabu hadi kwa alphabeti.
4. Je, kanga hutumikwa katika shughuli gani za nyumbani?
5. Wanaume wanaruhusiwa kuvaa kanga wapi au wakati gani?
6. Ni sherehe gani ambazo kanga inatumiwa na waswahili?
7. Ni sehemu gani ya kanga inayotumika kupitisha ujumbe wa mafumbo, busara au kutoa ushauri?
8. Watu walipotaka kupitisha ujumbe wao, walitumia kanga vipi?
9. Jamii ya Waswahili waliwapatia wasichana kanga wakati gani?
10. Kanga ya kisutu inatumika lini?



Zoezi F

Read the following article about Ramadan and answer the questions that follow.

> Ramadhan au ramadhani ndiyo mwezi wa tisa wa kalenda ya Kiislamu na Waislamu duniani kote huutukuza mwezi huu kwa kufunga na kufanya ibada nyingi.Ni mwezi ambao inaaminika Quran tukufu iliteremshwa na mwenyezi mungu kutoka mbinguni hadi ulimwenguni . Waislamu wengi duniani wanaamini kuwa mfungo wa Ramadhani ni miongoni mwa nguzo tano kuu za dini ya Kiislamu, tangu zama za Mtume Muhammad (SAW) zaidi ya miaka 1,400 iliyopita. Kwa kawaida swaumu huanza alfajiri na kumalizika baada ya kuzama kwa jua kila siku. Ramadhan hufanywa kwa saa 12 hadi 18 popote duniani kila siku, lakini inategemea mtu anaishi sehemu gani ya dunia.
>
> Wakati wa kufunga, kula, kunywa au chochote kinachohusiana na kujamiana kati ya mwanamume na mwanamke huepukwa kuanzia wakati wa alfajiri mpaka kuzama kwa jua.Kufunga ni wajibu wa kila mwislamu aliye na umri wa utu uzima. Watu wagonjwa, wanaosafiri, wazee, wajawazito, akina mama wanaonyonyesha au wagonjwa wa kisukari na wanawake walioko katika hedhi hawastahili kufunga kulingana na sheria za dini ya kiislamu.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Ramadhani huadhimishwa mwezi gani?
2. Ni wajibu wa waislamu duniani kote kufanya nini katika mwezi wa Ramadhani?
3. Kwa kawaida, saumu huanza na kuisha saa ngapi?
4. Ni watu gani wanaostahili kufunga kulingana na dini ya kiisilamu?
5. Ni makundi ya watu gani ambayo hayastahili kufunga? Na kwa nini?

Cultural Explorations

Holidays and observances vary across East African countries and communities. Most countries share common public holidays like New Year's Eve and New Year's Day. Other commonly celebrated holidays include Christmas, Good Friday, and Easter Sunday celebrated by Christians, as well as Eid al-Fitr and Eid al-Adha, commemorated mostly by the Muslim community. Labor Day is celebrated on May 1st across Kenya, Tanzania, Uganda, and Rwanda.

Celebrations specific to East African nations include those to celebrate independence from colonizers as well as to honor founders of the nations. In Kenya, this holiday is referred as *Jamhuri Day* meaning Republic Day and is celebrated on December 12th, while Tanzania and Uganda observe their Independence Day holidays on December 9th and October 9th, respectively. In East Africa, Diwali the Hindu festival of lights is also celebrated.

There are other major political commemorations with key significance in East Africa, especially those linked with liberation from the colonial rule, fight for democracy, and multipartyism, but which have not attained national holiday status. For instance, *Saba Saba Day* is observed on July 7th in both Kenya and Tanzania. This day commemorates the key role that Tanganyika African National Union (TANU) played in uniting Tanganyika and Zanzibar to form the Republic of Tanzania. In Kenya, July 7th commemorates the demonstrations for free elections that took place in 1990. During these holidays and holy days, East Africans cook food and invite friends and family over to commemorate the events. People choose to wear clothes based on the theme of the event they are celebrating, their traditional practices, and religious affiliations - particularly for Christmas and Eid al-Fitr.

Generally, communities adhere to certain rules and restrictions about their religious culture, diet, and attire to be worn during the religious celebrations. For the whole month of Ramadan, which takes place during the 9th month of the Islamic lunar calendar, the Muslim community will not consume any food nor drink anything between sunrise and sunset. Instead, Muslims will eat before dawn and after sunset, usually meeting together in the Mosque or community centers, or at home with other invited guests to break their fast together. They use this time together to share food, socialize, and pray as a community. The fasting is meant to help Muslims focus on their religion, faith and to read the Koran. Keeping these traditions during Ramadan allows reflection, self-improvement on one's character, faith, and improved relationships with others in the community as well as with the divine. Given the challenge that fasting from sunrise to sunset presents for some groups, those that are pregnant, elderly, or ill as well as children and preteens are exempted from this long period of self-deprivation. If able, they can still choose to fast for a few days. At the end of Eid al-Fitr, Muslim communities will hold a big ceremony to officially end this month of fasting. During this ceremony they will prepare various types of food, eat together, socialize, listen to music, and pray.

Cultural Reflections

Discuss the questions below with a partner.

1. Are there commons holidays shared by all people in your country? How are those holidays celebrated?
2. Are there holidays in your country that are only observed by certain groups? Are those holidays secular or religious? Are those holidays recognized officially by the broader community?
3. Are there holidays that properly belong to a certain portion of the community but that are adopted more broadly?
4. How do holidays and celebrations in your country compare to those in East Africa?

Zoezi G

Joseph and his host mother talk about the plans they have for the Eid al Fitr celebrations. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Mama: Vipi Joseph. Ninatumaini kuwa umekuwa na mfungo mzuri.

Joseph: Ndio mama. Nimefurahia sana kujifunza mambo mengi ya utamaduni na itikadi za dini ya kiisilamu katika kipindi hiki cha Ramadhani.

Mama: Ninafurahi kusikia kuwa umejifunza mambo mengi na pia umefurahia wakati huu. Kesho tutakuwa na sherehe kubwa ya Eid ul Fitr.

Joseph: Nimeona umenunua vyakula vingi sana ulipoenda sokoni. Je, unapanga kuandaa vyakula gani?

Mama: Ningependa kuandaa pilau, kuku wa kuchoma, samaki wa nazi, chapati, nyama choma, maandazi na chai

Joseph: Hivyo ni vyakula vingi sana. Ninafikiri utachukua muda mrefu sana kuvitayaarisha vyakula hivi vyote?

Mama: Bila shaka nitachukua muda mrefu, pengineasaa tano hivi.

Joseph: Utaandaa vyakula gani?

Mama: Unajua mimi ninapenda mapishi sana, kwa hivyo nitawaandalia wageni wangu vipochopocho vingi.

Joseph: Kweli, wewe ni mpishi Hodari Ninafamu pia kuwa sherehe hii ni muhimu sana kwa waislamu.

Mama: Ndiyo, sherehe hii ni muhimu sana kwa watu wetu. Huadhimisha sherehe hii kumaliza mfungo wa wa mwezi mtukufu wa Ramadhan dunia kote. Kwa hivyo kesho sisi tutaandaa karamu kubwa na tutakula pamoja na rafiki zetu. Wanaangu wote na familia watafika kusherehekeasikukuu hii.

Joseph: Kweli itakuwa siku ya kufana na afamilia itaweza kusafiri kwa sababu sherehe hii huadhimishwa kwenye taifa nzima kwa hivyo watu walioajiriwa huwa hawafanyi kazi kwenye siku hii. Wao huwa na likizo ya umma.

Mama: Umekaribishwa sana pamoja na wanafunzi wengine katika darasa lako kuja kusherehekea na sisi sherehe hii

Joseph: Asante kwa mwaliko wako. Nitawapigia rafiki zangu simu ili waweze kufika mapema kwenye sherehe hii. Je, tutaanza sherehe saa ngapi kesho?

Mama: Tutaanza saa kumi na moja za jioni.

Joseph: Safi kabisa!

Jibu maswali yafuatayo:

1. Joseph amefurahia nini?
2. Mama alimwambia Joseph kesho kutakuwa na sherehe gani?
3. Sherehe hii huadhimisha nini kwa waumini wa dini ya Kiislamu?
4. Je watu hufanya kazi siku ya Eid ul Fitr?
5. Mama anapanga kupika vyakula gani kwenye sikukuu ya Eid ul Fitr??
6. Vyakula anavyopanga kuandaa mama vitachukua muda gani kuvipika?
7. Mama angependa Joseph aalike nani kwenye sherehe hii?
8. Sherehe itaanza saa ngapi?



Zoezi H

Get together with a partner and find out a holiday that you both celebrate. Discuss the typical activities that you associate with that holiday, including any special food preparedor traditions that are practiced. Be ready to share what you have learned with the class.



Zoezi I

Your host family would like to know about the different traditions your family has for the holidays. Working with the same partner that you had above, briefly describe the holiday that you both celebrate and the different traditions that you have.



Zoezi J

Juma calls Joseph to find out whether he has plans during the Independence Day celebration. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Juma: Vipi Joseph? Habari za jioni?

Joseph: Salama. Na wewe je?

Juma: Salama pia. Je, una mipango yeyote kesho? Kesho ni siku ya likizo ya kitaifa ya kusherehekea siku ambayo Tanzania ilipata uhuru kutoka kwa serikali ya uingereza.

Joseph: Alaa sikujua kwamba Tanzania ilipata uhuru wake mnamo tarehe tisa Desemba. Je, Tanzania ilipata uhuru mwaka gani?

Juma: Nchi ya Tanzania ilipata uhuru mwaka wa elfu moja mia tisa sitini na moja.

Joseph: Kweli nchi hii ni changa mno. Je, Watanzania hufanya nini kuadhimisha sikuu hii?

Juma: Wakati wa sherehe hii ya kitaifa, kwa kawaida huwa na hafla kubwa katika uwanja mkubwa wa michezo wa Sokoine. Katika hafla hii huna burudani mbali mbali (nyimbo, dansi, michezo ya kuigiza). Baada ya burudani huwa na kipindi cha hotuba kutoka kwa viongozi mbali mbali wa serikali. Wa mwisho kutoka hotuba huwa rais.

Joseph: Inaonekana hii ni sherehe muhimu sana. Je, tunaweza kwenda kwa uwanja wa Sokoine kuhudhuria sherehe hii?

Juma: Unaweza kwenda bali kutakuwa na watu wengi sana. Mimi hupenda kutazama hafla hiyo kwenye runinga.

Joseph: Ningependa kutazama kwa runinga pia.

Juma: Sherehe hiyo ya kitaifa itaanza mwendo was saa tatu za asubuhi hadi saa nane mchana. Kama hutakuwa na shughuli tunaweza kwenda pamoja kupata burudani zaidi katika klabu kipya mjini.

Joseph: Wazo nzuri nitajiunga nawe kwenda kilabuni. Nitakuwa tayari saa tisa mchana.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Tanzania ilipata Uhuru wake tarehe gani?
2. Watanzania hufanya nini kuadhimisha sikukuu ya Uhuru?
3. Juma hupenda kufanya nini badala ya kuhudhuria sherehe ya Uhuru?
4. Juma angependa yeye na Joseph wafanye nini baada ya sherehe ya Uhuru?



Zoezi K

Shamila receives a phone call from Joseph to invite her to the Independence Day ceremony but she already has her own plans. Read the conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Joseph: Vipi Shamila? Habari za asubuhi?

Shamila: Salama, u hali gani?

Joseph: Niko salama. Mimi pamoja na wanafunzi wengine tunapanga kuhudhuria siku ya Uhuru wa Tanzania kisha tutaenda kwenye makavazi ya Azimio la Arusha, na saa za jioni tutaenda kwenye hoteli moja mjini kubarizi. Ningependa kukualika kwa sherehe hiyo na shughuli zitakazofuata baadaye.

Shamila: Je, sherehe itaanza saa ngapi?

Joseph: Mwaku huu, sherehe itaanza saa nne za mchana hadi saa kumi unusu za jioni.

Shamila: Samahani sana sitaweza kufika kwa sherehe wakati huo kwa sababu nilikuwa nimepanga kwenda kijijini kuhudhuria sherehe ya ndoa ya familia ya Bi. Farida. Lakini nitajaribu kufika kwenye hoteli baadaye.

Joseph: Hamna neno. Tutakukosa kwenye sherehe. Ninaelewa kuwa ulikuwa na mipango mingine. Nitakuarifu hoteli tutakayokuwa na ninatumaini utaweza kufika tuburudike kidogo.

Shamila: Sawa. Ninashukuru kwa mwaliko na ninatumaini tutaonana baadaye.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Sherehe ambayo Joseph anamwalika Shamila ni ya nini?
2. Kwa nini Shamila hataweza kuhudhuria sherehe hii?
3. Sherehe hiyo itaanza na kuisha saa ngapi?
4. Joseph na rafiki zake wanapanga kufanya nini baada ya sherehe?
5. Shamila na Joseph wataonana muda gani?



Zoezi L

One of your classmates calls to invite you to a party being held that evening. Unfortunately, you already have plans and have to decline the invitation. As it turns out, you are planning to hold a party of your own next weekend, so describe your plans and invite the friend to attend.

Zoezi M

Write a short email inviting your East African friends to a holiday celebration typical of your culture. Describe the holiday so that they know what to expect. Make sure to include information about when and where they need to come and whether they are expected to bring anything.

Zoezi N

Shamila has been writing a journal based on some of the activities she has participated in during her visit in East Africa. Read the selection from her journal entry about the wedding she attended and answer the questions that follow.





Hapa tulikuwa tunahudhuria sherehe ya harusi. Bwana na Bi. Harusi walipewazawadi kadha wa kadha.

Hii ni sherehe ya posa ya binamu yake Yusufu iliyofanyika mjini Dodoma kabla ya Harusi yao. Kwenye sherehe hii, akina mama huwavalisha binti zao kanga na kuwafunika kichwa, usoni hadi kwenye miguu. Sherehe hii ni muhimu sana kwa mwanamwali. Bwana harusi mtarajiwa anahitaji kuchagua mpenzi wake kati ya wasichana wengine waliovaa kanga.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Unafikiri Bwana na Bi Arusi walipelekewa zawadi gani?
2. Sherehe ya posa ya binamu yake Yusufu ilifanyika wapi?
3. Kwa nini akina mama huwavalisha binti zao kanga, kwenye sherehe ya posa?
4. Bwana arusi mtarajiwa anahitaji kufanya nini siku ya posa?



Zoezi O

Write a detailed essay about a cultural celebration in your culture. Include a brief historical background of the celebration, its cultural significance, when and how it is celebrated and common activities that take place during the celebration. Highlight any similarities and differences in the celebration in your culture and those you have learned about in East Africa.

Key Vocabulary

Nouns

asili origin ; original (vazi la kiasili-traditional cloth)
bi arusi bride
burudani entertainment
desturi custom
harusi wedding
hotuba speech
ijapokuwa although
jando initiation rites for men
kanga a colorful decorated piece of cloth
kijadi traditional
kiserikali governmental
kitambaa a piece of cloth or material
kubalehe coming of age
kubalehe coming of age
likizo holiday
mafanikio success
mahafali graduation
mahafali graduation
mapambo decoration
mapinduzi revolution
mazishi funeral
mazishi funeral
mila tradition
muziki music
mwaliko invitation
ndoa marriage
ngoma traditional dance
Pasaka Easter
pati party
ratiba program
sali pray
shamrashmra celebratory atmosphere
sherehe feast
sherehe ya kupewa jina naming ceremony
shukrani gratitude/thank you
Siku ya baba Father's Day
Siku ya mama Mother's Day
Siku ya Wapendanao Valentines Day
sikukuu holiday
unyago initiation rites for women
utamaduni culture
wosia advice
zawadi gift

Verbs

-adhimisha to commemorate
-alika to invite
-ambatisha to enclose/attach
-andaa to prepare
-dhihirisha to confirm
-funga to close/fast
-hudhuria to attend

-karibisha to welcome
-ngaa to shine or dazzle
-olewa to get married
-peleka to to take
-pokea to receive
-sherehekea to celebrate
-shukuru to thank
-swali to pray

Phrases

Furahieni ndoa yenu. Enjoy your marriage.
Heri na baraka za krisimasi. Merry Christmas
Heri za mwaka mpya. Happy New Year
Hongera! Congratulations!
Idd Mubarak. Happy Eid.
Kila la heri! Good luck!
Likizo njema! Good Holiday!
Ninatazamia likizo njema! I look forward to a good holiday
Pasaka njema! Good Easter!
Sherehe njema! Good celebration!
Tuko nawe/nanyi. We are with you/you have our sympathies.

Sources

6.1 Afya na Magonjwa

- Zoezi R text on malaria is adapted and translated from the Mayo Clinic. Original text is copyrighted. Last accessed 5/23/2023. https://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/malaria/symptoms-causes/syc-20351184.
- "Mosquito" by Jim Gathany is in the Public Domain. Last accessed 5/23/2023. https://phil.cdc.gov/details.aspx?pid=5814.
- Screen capture from "Malaria No More Sing-Along" by Ubongo Kids. Last accessed 5/25/2023. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=6DzwoN7OfAs.

6.2 Mavazi na maumbile

- T-shirt, jacket, blouse, dress, jeans, skirt, shorts, pants and high-heeled shoes by Anna Boyles of the Open Language Resource Center are licensed under a CC BY NC ND. First used in *Mezhdu nami* (https://mezhdunami.org).
- Dera and bra by Jaycie Novak of the Open Language Resource Center are licensed under CC BY NC.
- Shirt, tie, sweater, baseball cap, belt by Anna Boyles of the Open Language Resource Center are licensed under a CC BY NC ND. First used in *Mezhdu nami* (https://mezhdunami.org).
- Kanzu, suit and vest by Jaycie Novak of the Open Language Resource Center are licensed under CC BY NC.
- Glasses and necklace by Anna Boyles of the Open Language Resource Center are licensed under a CC BY NC ND. First used in *Mezhdu nami* (https://mezhdunami.org).
- Bracelet, ring, henna and handbag by Jaycie Novak of the Open Language Resource Center are licensed under CC BY NC.
- "Fashion Africa Seminar – Nairobi Launch by Myundz Community" by Myndz Community is licensed under CC BY ND 2.0. https://www.flickr.com/photos/myndzcommunity/8144213637. Last accessed 5/25/2023.
- Lupita Nyong'o Vogue cover, January 2018. Photographed by Mikael Jansson. All rights reserved by Condé Nast. https://www.vogue.com/article/lupita-nyongo-black-panther-vogue-january-2018-issue. Last accessed 10/27/2023.
- "Masai Market Nairobi" by Ninaras is licensed under CC BY SA. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Masai_Market_Nairobi_02.jpg. Last accessed 5/25/2023.
-

6.3 Leo Hali ya Hewa Iko Vipi?

- "Weather Icons" by Matthew Petroff are licensed under a CC0 (public domain). https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Weather_Icons.png. Last accessed 5/25/2023.
- Screen capture from "Utabiri wa Hali ya Hewa 24.11.2022" by Meteo Tanzania. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=7C5DGiitkBc. Last accessed 5/25/2023.
- Screen capture from "Utabiri wa Hali ya Hewa" by KBC Channel 1. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UBfGEeRhYdQ. Last accessed 5/25/2023.
- Screen capture from "Utabiri wa Hali ya Hewa" by KBC Channel 1. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=UBfGEeRhYdQ. Last accessed 5/25/2023.

6.4 Sherehe

- “Beige Elegance Wedding Invitation” by After.room is released under a Canva Free Content License. Last accessed 10/15/2023. https://www.canva.com/p/templates/EAFb91IbHjw-beige-elegance-wedding-invitation/.
- “Woman in kanga from Siyu” by Petr Berka is in the Public Domain. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:KangaSiyu1.jpg. Last accessed 5/25/2023.
- “Kanga, Tanzania, 2011” by Gavrosh is licensed under CC BY SA. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kanga,_Tanzania,_2011.jpg. Last accessed 5/25/2023.
- Zoezi F article on Ramadan is adapted from “Ramadhan: Nchi gani zina mfungo mrefu au mfupi zaidi duniani?”. All rights reserved by BBC News. https://www.bbc.com/swahili/articles/cyx0wzn31e2o. Last accessed 6/1/2023.
- Wedding pictures by Brenda Wawire are licensed under CC BY NC.

7. Safari na Starehe

Travel and Leisure

Essential Questions:

1. How does transport differ in different societies?
2. To what extent does transport affect the economy in East African communities?
3. How does social status determine the modes of transport used by different people?
4. What is the role of governance and economic development in determining the transport systems of different countries?
5. What significance does culture and tradition have on the leisure activities across East Africa?

Stage One:

By the end of this unit, students should be able to:

- talk about the various means of transportation one might use in East Africa;
- ask for and give directions;
- ask and answer question about travel preferences;
- ask questions about important features of tourist attractions;
- describe their favorite possible travel destinations;
- present information about the places they want to visit, including a specific itinerary of planned activities
- present a hypothetical trip by giving information about the location, cost, means of transport, attractions, and duration of stay.

Stage Two:

What will be acceptable evidence of the student's knowledge and ability?

INTERPRETIVE TASKS	INTERPERSONAL TASKS	PRESENTATIONAL TASKS
Students will identify different types of transport. Students will identify key details from different tourist attractions from a description of a written text provided.Students will identify key details from different tourist attraction features from a description of a written text provided. Students will identify a travel destination of their choice from the internet and give 3 or 4 reasons as to why they would like to visit.	Students will ask for and receive directions. Students will ask classmates about their their travel preferences, including the desired location, means of transportation, time of year and planned itinerary.Students will discuss their favorite trips with classmates. will ask classmates about their their travel preferences, including the desired location, means of transportation, time of year and planned itinerary. Students will work in pairs to simulate a call to a travel agency to make a reservation for a trip within East Africa. Students will simulate a phone call to a hotel to make a reservation,Students will simulate a phone call to a hotel room to make a reservation, Students will describe their desired travel destinations in East Africa and be prepared to retell the descriptions of at least two partners.	Students will will write a report about a trip to selected places in East Africa. Students will create digital pictures to give a presentation on a famous East African wildlife attraction. The presentation will include the name of the attraction, location, historical information and animals found there. Students will give a detailed presentation about a planned trip to East Africa, including attractions that will be visited, travel companions, hotel and restaurant plans and other logistics.

Stage Three:

What activities will students participate in to prepare them to demonstrate what they know and can do?

7.1 Usafiri

Zoezi A



miguu



sketibodi



baiskeli



pikipiki



tuktuk/bajaji



gari



teksi



basi



matatu



daladala



ndege



treni

Shamila asks her host mother about how she gets around town on a daily basis. Read the conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Shamila: Habari za jioni bi Farida?

Farida: Salama sana Shamila. Una mipango gani jioni hii?

Shamila: Mimi na wanafunzi wengine katika darasa la Kiswahili tunapanga kwenda mjini. Wasanii wengi maarufu kutoka Afrika Mashariki kama vile Zuchu, Diamond Platinumz, Sauti Sol, na wengineo watawatumbuiza watu kwenye tamasha ya Suluhu.

Farida: Safi kabisa. Klabu cha Blue Post kiko mbali kidogo kutoka hapa jijini. Mtatumia usafiri gani kwenda huko? Kuna aina mbalimbali za usafiri kutoka Mji wa Dar es Salaam hadi mji wa Magogoni.

Shamila: Je, wewe unapenda kutumia usafiri gani unaposafiri kwenda miji ambayo haiko mbali sana na mji wa Dar es Salaam.

Farida: Mimi hutumia daladala au wakati mwingine nikiwa na shughuli za kikazi mimi hupenda kutumia teksi. Lakini ninaposafiri humu mjini Dar es Salaam mimi hutumia Tuk Tuk/Bajaji kwa sababu huwa haraka na pia huweza kupita kaika msongamano wa magari kwa urahisi. Je, Mtaenda mji wa Magogoni. kwa usafiri gani?

Shamila: Tumekubaliana kwenda kwa teksi kwa sababu tutarudi usiku wa manane na itakuwa bora tukitumia teksi.

Farida: Hiyo ni sawa kabisa. Ninawatakia burudani safi kabisa. Ninakutakia safari njema.

Shamila: Asante sana Bi. Farida. Uwe na jioni njema pia.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila ataenda wapi jioni hii?
2. Shamila anapanga kwenda pamoja na nani?
3. Bi. Farida hutumia usafiri gani anaposafiri miji iliyo mbali na mji mkuu wa Dar es Salaam?
4. Bi. Farida hutumia usafiri gani anaposafiri miji iliyo karibu na mji mkuu wa Dar es Salaam?
5. Shamila watatumia usafiri gani kwenda Thika na kwa nini?



Zoezi B

Joseph calls one of his East African friends who lives in California. After exchanging greetings they talk about Joseph's travel preferences in Tanzania. Listen to their conversation and answer the questions below.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Joseph anaenda wapi sasa na anaenda kufanya nini?
2. Joseph anaenda kwa usafiri gani?
3. Joseph anapoenda miji iliyo karibu na Dar es Salaam yeye hupenda kutumia usafiri gani?
4. Kwa nini Joseph hapendi kutumia pikipiki ?
5. Kwa nini Joseph anapenda usafiri wa umma?
6. Kwa nini Juma hapendi kusafiri kwa pikipiki ?

Zoezi C

Poll at least three classmates about the means of transport they prefer to use when traveling locally within cities. Your classmates should explain why they prefer the particular modes of transportation. Be prepared to report back to the class.

Zoezi D

Work with a partner to discuss your experiences with the modes of transport shown below. You might use adverbs of frequency and describe the situation in which you used each mode of transport.







Zoezi E

You are planning to travel to East Africa to study abroad. One of the requirements for you to fulfill is to attend the pre-travel orientation workshops. The next orientation sessions will focus on travel within and across cities in East Africa. One of the presenters is a Kiswahili speaker from East Africa. In pairs prepare at least 10 questions that you will ask the presenter about transport in East Africa.

Zoezi F

You and a group of friends in your study abroad Kiswahili class are planning to stay locally in Tanzania during the mid-semester break. Discuss your travel plans, including details of where you are going and the means of transport you will use to get there.

Zoezi G

You have been staying in East Africa for approximately six months. During your stay you have traveled to several cities in East Africa. Write a blog to share your experiences.

Zoezi H

Read the short essay on the challenges of using different means of transport in East Africa and answer the questions that follow.

> Katika nchi ya Kenya na zingine katika Afrika Mashariki wasafiri wanapata changamoto nyingi sana za usafiri. Hasa mji wa Nairobi na vilevile miji mikubwa mingine kama Dar es Salaam, kuna msongamano wa magari kwa kuwa idadi ya magari imeongezeka zaidi na serikali haina pesa za kutosha kujenga barabara zaidi. . Wasafiri wengi husafiri kwa matatu nchini Kenya au daladala katika nchi ya Tanzania. Kuna watu wengine ambao husafiri kwa magari ya kibinafsi ingawa ni bei ghali sana kwa sababu wasafiri hao huhitaji kununua mafuta na pia kulipa ada ya kuegesha magari yao. Bei ya mafuta katika nchi nyingi za Afrika Mashariki ni ghali sana. Pia, abiria wanaotumia usafiri wa umma hupata changamoto nyingi. Kwanza, msafiri anahitaji kwenda kwenye kituo cha matatu au dalaladala na ni lazima asubiri hadi gari lijae. Kuna sehemu zingine ambapo wasafiri hutumia gari moshi au treni lakini kuna changamoto kadha zinazowapata watu wanaoamua kutumia treni. Kwanza gari moshi hupatikana kwenye vituo vichache sana kwa hivyo sio wasafiri wengi wanaoweza kusafiri kwa gari la moshi. Pia mara kwa mara nafasi hazitoshi kwa hivyo watu wanahitaji kusimama na kusongamana sana. Faida za gari la moshi ni kuwa linasafiri kwa haraka zaidi kuliko usafiri wae barabarani kwa kuwa magari husongamana sana hasa katika miji mikubwa ya Afrika Mashariki. Kwa mfano nchini Kenya, gari moshi hutumia takribani dakika thelathini kutoka kituo cha treni cha Syokimau hadi kwenye kituo ch treni cha mji wa Nairobi. Wasafiri wengine hutumia bodaboda au bajaji lakini usafiri huu ni hatari sana. Wasafiri wanaweza kupata majeraha iwapo bodaboda itaanguka. Pia ni ghali zaidi kutumia bodaboda na haiwezekani kutumia usafiri huu kwenye sehemu zingine nchini. Matajiri na wafanyibiashara mashuhuri hutumia ndege kwa kuwa ni kasi ingawa ni bei ghali sana na hakuna viwanja vya ndege kwenye sehemu zingine nchini.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Kwa nini kuna msongamano wa magari kwenye miji mkubwa ya Afrika Mashariki?
2. Wanaotumia magari ya binafsi wanapata changamoto zipi?
3. Abirira wanaotumia usafiri wa umma hupata changamoto zipi?
4. Kuna changamoto zipi kwa abiria wanaotumia usafiri wa gari la moshi?
5. Usafiri wa bodaboda au bajaji una hatari zipi?

Zoezi I

Read the brief news article below and answer the questions that follow.

Viongozi wajadiliana kuhusu upanuzi wa sekta ya usafiri



Miaka michache iliyopita, aliyekuwa Rais wa nchi ya Kenya pamoja na mke wake, na maofisa wakubwa wa serikali walipanga safari ya kwenda mjini Washington kutembelea aliyekuwa Rais wa Marekani Donald Trump. Malengo ya safari hii yalikuwa kuzungumzia masuala mbalimbali ya maendeleo hasa jinsi ya kukuza biashara na kuimarisha usalama katika Afrika Mashariki. Baada ya mazungumzo, Bwana Uhuru Kenyatta alitoa taarifa kuwa walikubaliana kuboresha ufungamano wao wa miaka mingi na Marekani katika biashara uwekezaji na usalama. Miongoni mwa ushirikiano likiwa swala la kupanga mikakati ya kupea kampuni za marekani kandarasi za ujenzi wa barabara za kisasa, kwa mfano kutoka Nairobi hadi Mombasa, na njia za kuufadhili ujenzi huo. Viongozi hao wawili walikubaliana kuanzishwa kwa safari za ndege za moja kwa moja kutoka Nairobi hadi New York ili kunufaisha biashara, uchumi na utalii kati ya nchi zote mbili. Ingawa tiketi za usafari huu ni ghali muda wa kusafiri kutoka mji wa Nairobi hadi mji wa New York umepunguzwa kwa takribani asaa tatu. Jambo hili limewavutia abiria kutoka kwa mashirika na kampuni mbalimbali pamoja na watalii wa hadhi kufika Kenya na Afrika Mashariki, na bila shaka limeinua uchumi na kuleta maendeleo kwa kiwango fulani.

1. Ni watu gani walikuwa pamoja na Uhuru Kenyatta alipokwenda Marekani?
2. Malengo makubwa ya safari ya Marekani ya aliyekuwa Rais wa Kenya, Bwana Uhuru Kenyatta yalikuwa ni yapi?
3. Nchi ya Kenya na ya Marekani zilikubaliana kushirikiana kwa njia zipi?
4. Muda wa kusafiri kutoka mji wa Nairobi hadi New York umepunguzwa kwa saangapi?
5. Kuanzishwa kwa safari ya ndege ya moja kwa moja kutoka Nairobi hadi New York imechangia vipi katika biashara, uchumi na maendeleo?

Cultural Exploration

Watch the two documentaries on *matatus*, the brightly colored buses that dominate public transportation in cities like Nairobi. Decorated with graffiti-inspired art and promoting a range of local musicians, they are a clear expression of East African youth culture. When you have watched both videos answer the questions that follow.



Inside the World of Matwana Matatu Culture
CNN Feature

tinyurl.com/4n4xc6fx



Matatu: My life, My Art
CGTN Africa

tinyurl.com/4r7d2xas

1. What is the meaning of the word *matatu*, and what is its origin?
2. How would you describe *matatu* culture? Are there similar practices around automobiles in your own culture? How do they manifest themselves?
3. There are several catch phrases that are popular on matatus. These include "*Kama una haraka shuka ukimbie*" (If you are in a hurry alight and run) and *Hatusemi wewe ni mnono lakini ukikalia viti viwili lipia* (We are not saying you are fat but when you sit on two seats, you need to pay for them). What is the purpose of these expressions?
4. Why are *matatus* referred to as moving museums?
5. Why do you think the majority of the music played in the *nganyas*, the modern, fancy and pimped-out *matatus* is hip-hop and reggae? Are there particular types of music that are associated with particular types of automobiles in your culture?



Zoezi J

Prepare a presentation that compares and contrasts the common means of transport in East Africa (private vs public) to the common means of transport in your culture. Be prepared to answer questions from the audience.



Zoezi K

Joseph is traveling to Arusha over the weekend and needs to buy a bus ticket. Read his conversation with the sales agent and answer the questions that follow.

Joseph: Habari za asubuhi?

Wakala Mauzo: Salama sana. Nikusaidiaje?

Joseph: Ningependa kukata tiketi ya basi la jioni. Ninaweza kuhifadhi kiti cha usafiri?

Wakala mauzo: Ndiyo. Kuna basi la litakaloondoka saa moja unusu za jioni na kuna jingine la saa nne kamili? Ungependa kuondoka saa ngapi?

Joseph: Safari ni ya saa ngapi kutoka Dar es Salaam hadi Arusha?

Wakala wa mauzo: Safari itachukua saa kumi na nusu kufika Arusha.

Joseph: Sawa, ningependa kuondoka saa moja unusu za jioni. Nauli ni pesa ngapi?

Wakala wa mauzo: Unahitaji tiketi ngapi?

Joseph: Ninasafiri peke yangu.

Wakala wa mauzo: Sawa. Tafadhali lipa shilingi elfu kumi na moja, mia tatu na hamsini.

Joseph: Pesa zako ndizo hizi.

Wakala wa mauzo: Asante. Ungependa kiti kipi? Tazama picha hii ya viti vya basi.

Joseph: Kiti nambari kumi ni sawa. Ninafikiri ni sehemu nzuri ili nilale kidogo kwa kuwa safari ni ndefu sana.

Wakala wa mauzo: Subiri dakika tano nikuhifadhie tiketi yako.

Joseph: Sawa. Hamna neno.

Wakala wa mauzo: Tiketi yako ndiyo hii. Unaruhusiwa begi moja kubwa na mkoba mdogo bila malipo kulingana na sheria ya mizigo ya kampuni yetu. Kama utahitaji kubeba mizigo zaidi, unaweza kulipia kila begi shilingi elfu moja.

Joseph: Sawa. Nina begi moja kubwa tu. Nitahitaji kufika kwenye kituo cha basi muda gani kabla ya basi kuondoka?

Wakala wa mauzo: Utahitaji kufika kwenye kituo cha basi dakika thelathini kabla ya kusafiri.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Joseph alitaka kuondoka saa ngapi?
2. Nauli ya tiketi ilikuwa pesa ngapi?
3. Joseph alihifadhiwa kiti nambari gani?
4. Safari ya kutoka Dar es Salaam hadi Arusha ingechukua muda gani?
5. Kulingana na sheria ya mizigo ya kampuni ya Kilimanjaro Bus Services, msafari aliruhusiwa kubeba begi ngapi?

Zoezi L

Your friend is planning to go to Kisumu this weekend and has asked you to come along. She has already bought a bus ticket and is hoping that you can travel together. Using the blank ticket below as a guide, come up with at least five questions to be sure you make your reservation for the right bus.



Zoezi M

Using the information that you learned in the preceding exercise, you need to buy a ticket for your weekend trip. Your teacher will play the role of the ticketing agent and may introduce complications to your plans. Role play the task.

Zoezi N

You and your friend are caught in a traffic jam and will miss the bus for your weekend trip. Call the booking office and ask whether you can get a refund or reschedule your ticket for the next bus.

Zoezi O

Read Shamila and Joseph's conversation about her trip to Dar es Salaam and answer the questions that follow.

Shamila: Habari za siku nyingi?

Joseph: Salama, habari za wikendi?

Shamila: Njema. Nilienda kwenye mji wa Dar es Salaam kutembea kidogo.

Joseph: Vizuri sana. Ulisafiri kwa njia gani?

Shamila: Nilienda kwa basi.

Joseph: Safari ya basi ilikuwa ndefu?

Shamila: Ndiyo, safari ilichukua muda mrefu kwa kuwa kulikuwa na msongamano wa magari.

Joseph: Mimi sipendi msongamano wa magari. Mbona hukusafiri kwa ndege au treni?

Shamila: Usafiri wa ndege ni bei ghali sana.

Joseph: Uliporudi ulitumia usafiri gani?

Shamila: Niliporudi ilibidi nisafiri kwa treni kutoka Dodoma hadi Dar es Salaam

Joseph: Je, treni ni bei ghali?

Shamila: Hapana nauli ya treni ni bei nafuu zaidi ya usafiri wa ndege ingawa ni ghali kidogo zaidi ya nauli ya basi.

Joseph: Ulisafirije kutoka kwenye kituo cha treni mjini Dar es Salaam hadi nyumbani kwenu?

Shamila: Nilisafiri kwa bajaji kwa kuwa sikuwa na pesa za kutosha kulipia teksi.

Joseph: Haikuwa hatari? Ninaogopa kusafiri kwa bajaji kidogo.

Shamila: Kulikuwa mchana kwa hivyo bajaji ilikuwa salama. Ningetumia teski au Uber kama ingekuwa usiku.

Joseph: Utanieleza zaidi kuhusu safari yako.

Shamila: Bila shaka! Kwaheri

Joseph: Kwaheri!

Jibu maswali yafuatayo

1. Shamila alitumia usafiri gani alipoenda Dodoma?
2. Kwa nini Shamila hakusafiri kwa basi aliporudi Dar es Salaam?
3. Mbona Shamila hakusafiri kwa ndege au treni?
4. Kati ya usafiri wa ndege na treni, ni usafiri gani ambao una bei nafuu?
5. Kwa nini Shamila hakutumia tesksi au Uber kutoka mji wa Dar es Salaam hadi nyumbani kwao?



Zoezi P

Shamila wrote a blog post about a recent weekend trip. Read the post and answer the questions that follow.

> Sawa! Mimi niliamka saa moja asubuhi. Nikajitayarisha, nikala chakula cha asubuhi, kisha nikaenda kwenye kituo cha basi. Nilipanda basi saa mbili kamili asubuhi na safari ilichukua muda mrefu kutoka mji wa Dar es Salaam hadi mji wa Dodoma kwa kuwa barabara haikuwa nzuri na kulikuwa na magari mengi sana. Baada ya kufika mji wa Dodoma tulikutana na rafiki yangu Mustafa, ambaye tulienda naye kutembelea sehemu tofauti tofauti. Kwanza tulienda kwenye Nyerere Square, saa saba mchana hadi saa saba unusu mchana. Tuliamua kutumia bajaji kwa kuwa ilikuwa bei nafuu na umbali wa kilomita mbili peke yake kutoka kwenye kituo cha basi. Baadaye, tulienda kula chakula cha mchana saa nane mchana hadi saa nane unusu mchana. Mwisho, tulienda kwenye msikiti wa Gaddafi ambao ni mkubwa zaidi nchini Tanzania na wa pili kwa ukubwa katika eneo la Afrika Mashariki kutoka saa nane unusu mchana hadi saa tisa unusu mchana. Baada ya kutoka kwenye msikiti tulikuwa tumechoka sana kwa hivyo nilitumia daladala kwenda kwenye kituo cha treni saa kumi mchana ili nirudi nyumbani kabla ya usiku.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Rafiki yake Shamila aliyeenda naye kutembelea sehemu tofauti aliitwa nani?
2. Shamila walienda wapi saa saba mchana hadi saa saba unusu mchana?
3. Kwa nini Shamila na rafiki yake waliamua kutumia bajaji badala ya usafiri mwingine kutoka kituo cha basi hadi kwenye Nyerere Square?
4. Shamila walitembelea sehemu gani nyingine baada ya kutoka Nyerere Square?
5. Shamila alitumia usafiri gani kutoka kwenye msikiti wa Gaddafi hadi kwenye kituo cha treni?
6. Kwa nini Shamila alienda kwenye kituo cha treni mapema?



Zoezi Q

Write a blog post about the bus trip to Kisumu that you took last weekend. Describe your interaction with the sales agent and how the trip went.



Zoezi R

Listen to this news report on transportation and answer the questions that follow.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Kabla ya ujenzi wa reli usafirishaji wa bidhaa kutoka ulaya hadi kwenye pwani ya Afrika Mashariki ulikuwa kwa njia gani?
2. Kuweko kwa reli kumesaidiaje nchi ya Kenya na Tanzania?
3. Nchi ya Kenya na Tanzania zimekumbwa na changamoto gani kusafirisha bidhaa zake?
4. Reli ya SGR ya Kenya ilizinduliwa mwaka gani, na ni Rais gani aliyeizindua?
5. Reli ya Kisasa ya Tanzania ina awamu ngapi na itasaidia kuunganisha nchi gani?
6. Mradi wa ujenzi wa SGR ulifadhiliwa na nchi gani?
7. Awamu ya kwanza ya ujenzi wa reli nchini Tanzania inaunganisha miji gani na ni ya kilomita ngapi?
8. Watanzania watapata faida gani mradi wa reli utakapomalizika
9. Una maoni gani kuhusu umuhimu wa reli kusafirisha bidhaa ukilinganisha na matumizi ya njia zingine za usafirishaji? Jadili na mwenzako?
10. Kama wewe ndiye waziri wa usafirishaji nchini Kenya, ni mambo gani ambayo ungeyapendekeza serikali ifanye? Jadili.

Zoezi S

Joseph and Shamila are curious about Sauti za Busara and watch *Zanzibar Celebrates: 20 Years of Sauti za Busara*. Watch the documentary with a partner and come up with answers to the following questions. Be prepared to share those answers with the class.



tinyurl.com/yeymxzvb

1. Mwanzilishi na mkurugenzi wa Busara productions anaitwaje, anatoka wapi na alifika Zanzibar mwaka gani?
2. Ni mambo gani yanayovutia sana katika kisiwa cha Zanzibar?
3. Tamasha ya kwanza ilianza mwaka gani na ilifanyika wapi?
4. Msanii maarufu Eric wainana aliimba wimbo gani?
5. Balozi wa Uswidi, Bi Elisabeth Jacobsen alisema tamasha la Sauti za Busara lina umuhimu gani kwa jamii?
6. Bwana Manfredo Haiti alisema tamasha hili lina umuhimu gani?
7. Bi. Anette Otilie kutoka Uswidi alisema tamasha hili linachangia vipi maendeleo na usawa wa kijinsia hasa wanawake?
8. Jukwaa la Sauti ya Busara liliwapatia Bi. Siti Amina, Bwana Zenji Boy, Damian Soul na wasanii wengine wa Afrika Mashariki nafasi gani?
9. Tamasha hili limekumbwa na changamoto gani?
10. Tamasha hili limewanufaisha wanabiashara vipi katika mji wa Stone Town?
11. Kulingana na Daktari Omar Abdallah tamasha hili limekuwa na mchango gani wa kimuziki na umuhimu gani kwa jumla?
12. Waziri Simai Mohamed alisema tamasha lilibadilisha takwimu za wageni kwenye mji wa Stone Town vipi?
13. Sauti za Busara ni tamasha nambari ngapi Afrika Mashariki, na barani Afrika?
14. Bi. Marion Munga alisema tamasha la Sauti za Busara lina umuhimu gani?
15. Unafikiri wanamuziki wana mchango gani katika jamii?

Zoezi T

Joseph is planning to visit Zanzibar to attend the yearly Sauti za Busara festival. Read Joseph's discussion with Masika about the best way to get there and answer the questions that follow.

Joseph: Habari za leo kaka?

Masika: Mzima, wewe ukoje?

Joseph: Mimi niko mzima pia. Ninapanga safari ya kwenda kwenye mji wa Stone Town kuhudhuria tamasha ya Sauti za Busara. Ninaweza kufika huko kwa njia ipi?

Masika: Je, ungependa kutumia usafiri wa kibinafsi au wa umma?

Joseph: Ninafikiri itakuwa ghali sana kusafiri kwa teksi. Kwa hivyo itabidi nitumie usafiri wa umma ili niokoe pesa kidogo.

Masika: Ndiyo, safari ni ndefu kwa kuwa ni lazima upitie kivukio cha Feri cha Stone Town kinachounganisha kisiwa cha Stone Town na kisiwa cha Bongoyo hapa mjini Dar es Salaam. Itakuwa ghali kulipa ada ya kusafirisha teksi kwenye feri.

Joseph: Ni takriban kilomita ngapi kutoka hapa nyumbani hadi kwenye kivukio cha Bongoyo?

Masika: Ninafikiri ni kilomita sita peke yake. Unaweza kutumia bajaji kwa kuwa ni bei nafuu kuliko teksi. Utakapofika kwenye kivukio cha Bongoyo, utahitaji kupanda feri.

Joseph: Kwenye feri, je ninaweza kulipa pesa taslimu au ninahitaji kununua tiketi?

Masika: Utahitaji kununua tiketi utakapofika kwenye kivukio ili uruhusiwe kutumia feri. Sikumbuki ni bei gani lakini si ghali.

Joseph: Baada ya kufika kwenye kivukio cha feri cha Stone town, nitawezaje kwenda mjini?

Masika: Unaweza kutumia daladala hadi kwenye kituo cha magari ya umma. Nauli ni takriban shilingi elfu moja na mia tano za Tanzania. Huhitaji kununa tiketi bali utalipa kwa pesa taslimu.

Joseph: Baada ya kufika kwenye kituo cha magari ya umma ninaweza kutembea au ninahitaji kutumia bajaji?

Masika: Unaweza kutembea. Lakini, kwa ajili ya usalama, kama utafika usiku tafadhali tumia bajaji ili usafiri kutoka kituo cha magari ya umma hadi kwenye jumba ambalo kutakuwa na tamasha ya Sauti ya Busara.

Joseph: Asante sana. Nitakupigia simu iwapo nitakuwa na swali jingine lolote.

Masika: Karibu na safari njema. Je, utaenda kwenye tamasha peke yako?

Joseph: Hapana, tutaenda na Shamila pamoja na wanafunzi wengine wa Kiswahili. Karibu twende na wewe.

Masika: Sijui kama nitaweza kwenda. Nitakupigia simu kesho kukufahamisha iwapo nitaweza kwenda na nyinyi. Mwaka jana tamasha ilikuwa nzuri sana. Kwa hivyo ningependa kuhudhuria tena ya mwaka huu.

Joseph: Safi, tutaongea baadaye.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Joseph anapanga safari ya kwenda wapi?
2. Kwa nini Joseph angependa kutumia usafiri wa umma, badala ya usafiri wa kibinafsi?
3. Kutoka kwenye nyumbani anapoishi hadi kwenye kivukio cha feri cha Bongoyo ni umbali gani?
4. Joseph atalipa pesa taslimu kwenye kivukio au atahitaji kununua tiketi?
5. Baada ya kufika kwenye kivukio cha mji wa Stone Town, Masika anamshauri Joseph atumie usafiri gani?
6. Unafikiri ni bora kutembea, kutumia daladala au bajaji kama Joseph atafika kivukio cha Stone Town mapema?
7. Joseph ataenda kwenye Tamasha la Sauti ya Busara wakiwa na nani?
8. Je, Masika ataweza kuhudhuria tamasha ya mwaka huu?
9. Kwa nini Masika angependa kwenda kwenye Tamasha ya mwaka huu?
10. Masika atampigia Joseph simu lini kumjuza kama ataweza kwenda nao kwenye tamasha?



Zoezi U

Shamila has decided to accompany Joseph on his trip to the Sauti za Busara festival. Listen to her phone conversation with the travel agent and answer the questions below.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila anapanga safari ya kwenda wapi na atatumia usafiri gani?
2. Shamila alinunua tiketi ngapi na watasafiri siku gani?
3. Kwa nini Shamila na Joseph wangependa kukaa karibu na jukwaa la forodhani?
4. Kwa nini bei ya chumba cha hoteli ni ghali kwenye mji wa Stone Town?
5. Kwa nini Shamila na Joseph hawataweza kula kwenye hoteli watakayokuwa wakikaa?



Zoezi V

Plan a short trip with your partner and come up with a list of questions that you are likely to be asked when contacting the travel agent. At least one group of students will need to act out the situation with the teacher playing the role of the travel agent. If that group gets stuck, they can ask other members of the class for help.



Zoezi W

On your way back home from your trip the bus on which you are traveling breaks down. Call the friend who is picking you up and tell them that you will arrive late.

On your way back home from your trip, the bus on which you are traveling breaks down. Call the friend who is picking you up and tell them that you will arrive late.



Zoezi X

Recount a recent trip that you took and describe what happened, including who went on the trip, the planning, and some details of how the trip went. Provide pictures of the trip if you have them. What challenges or unexpected complications did you encounter?

Key Vocabulary

Nouns

baisikeli bicycle
basi bus
biashara business
bodaboda bicycle taxi; motorcycle taxi
boti boat
chumba cha abiria passenger lounge; passenger station
dereva driver
gari car
gharama cost
helikopta helicopter
jeti jet
kituo cha basi bus stop
kituo cha treni train station
kondakta; utingo conductor
lori truck; lorry
malalamishi complaints
malipo payment
manowari submarine
matatu; daladala van, minivan, minibus
meli ship
miguu legs
motokaa car
mzigo luggage
nahodha captain of a ship
ndege airplane
ngalawa/mashua small boat
pantoni ferry boat
rubani pilot
rukwama; mkokoteni pull cart
safari journey; trip
sare uniform
sehemu ya tiketi ticket counter
sehemu ya mizigo baggage claim
stima steamship
teksi taxi
tiketi ticket
toroli wheelbarrow
trekta tractor
treni; gari (la) moshi train
tuktuku; bajaji tuk tuk
umma public
uwanja wa ndege airport
vipandio staircase
vyombo means (of transport)
wasafiri; abiria passengers
wasaidizi/waudumu wa ndege airline crew

Verbs

-abiri to board
-jaza fill
-keti sit
-kwenda to go

-lalamika to complain
-leta bring
-lipa pay
-nyamaza keep quiet
-panga arrange
-rudisha take back
-safiri to travel
-shika hold/take
-shuka get out of (a car)
-shukisha drop off a passenger
-shusha bring down
-simama stand up
-songa move
-songesha move something/someone
-tumia to use
-weka put/store

Distance Phrases

karibu near
mbali far
ni karibu it is near
ni karibu kidogo it is a little near
ni mbali it is far
ni mbali kidogo it is a little far
si mbali it is not far
si mbali sana it is not very far

Phrases

Endesha polepole. Drive slowly.
Lipa nauli. Pay for your transport.
Nashukia pale kituoni. I will get off at the station.
Nimefika. I have arrived.
Nipe mizigo. Give me the luggage.
Nirudishie pesa zilizosalia. Give me my change.
Nishukishe. Drop me off.
Njia/usafiri gani? On which means of transport?
Pole kwa ajali. Sorry about the accident.
Punguza mwendo. Slow down.
Punguza sauti. Lower the volume.
Siendi mbali. I am not going.
Uliendaje? How did you go?
Ulilipa nauli ya pesa ngapi? How much fare did you pay?
Uliona nini? What did you see?
Ulisafirije? How did you travel?
Ulitumia nini kusafiri? What means of transport did you use?
Ulitumia usafiri gani? What means of transport did you use?
Utalipaje? How will you pay?

7.2 Starehe na Burudani

Zoezi A



On arriving in Stone Town to attend Sauti za Busara festival, Joseph and Shamila check into the hotel where they will be staying.

Mpokea wageni: Karibu sana hapa kasri la Dhow Palace! Poleni kwa safari yenu.

Joseph na Shamila: Asante, tushapoa.

Mpokea wageni: Tafadhali nipatie vyeti vyenu vya kusafiri. Vyeti hivi vinaweza kuwa vitambulisho au pasipoti.

Joseph: Sisi ni wamarekani kwa hivyo hatuna vitambulisho vya Tanzania lakini tuna pasipoti za kusafiri. Ndizo hizi hapa.

Mpokea wageni: Asante. Tafadhali subirini kidogo.

Joseph: Sawa hamna neno.

Mpokea wageni: Ninaona mlihifadhiwa vyumba viwili na Furaha Adventures.

Shamila: Ndiyo, nishalipia vyumba hivyo.

Mpokea wageni: Kweli. Mngependa kula vyakula vyote humu hotelini?

Shamila: Hapana, itakuwa ghali sana kula vyakula vyote humu hotelini. Tutakula chakula cha asubuhi tu. Je, kuna mgahawa hapa karibu ambapo tunaweza kula vyakula vya kitamaduni?

Mpokea wageni: Bila shaka. Kuna migahawa mingi inayotayarisha vipochopocho vya vyakula na vinywaji. Kwenye migahawa mingine ya kisasa unaweza kupata vyakula vyepesi kama Piza na sandwichi.

Shamila: Sisi hatupendi migahawa ya vyakula vyepesi. Tunapenda vyakula vya asili ya Tanzania kama pilau, maharagwe ya nazi, bhajia, mchuzi wa pweza, mishikaki ya nyama na kadhalika. Vyakula hivi ni bei nafuu zaidi kuliko vyakula vyepesi na ni vizuri kwa afya.

Joseph: Je, kuna mahali ambapo tunaweza kunywa juisi ya ukwaju na miwa.

Mpokea wageni: Kwenye chumba kuna nakala ya orodha ya migahawa na nambari za simu mnazoweza kupiga ili kuagiza vyakula vyovyote ambapo mnavitaka. Hizi ni funguo zenu za kadi. Dada yangu, nambari ya chumba chako ni mia moja na kumi na tisa, naye kaka yangu, chumba chako ni nambari mia moja na ishirini na mbili. Vyumba vyenu vimekaribiana sana.

Joseph: Chakula cha asubuhi huwa saa ngapi?

Mpokea wageni: Chakula cha asubuhi huanza saa moja asubuhi hadi saa nne asubuhi. Tuna vyakula vizuri sana. Mtavifurahia. Pia mnaweza kupiga simu nambari 10 iliyo chumbani mwenu na kuagiza huduma za chumba au kama mngependa huduma yoyote. Kuna sefu pia ya kuweka vitu vyenye thamani kubwa kama vile pesa na kadhalika.

Shamila na Joseph: Asante sana.

Mpokea wageni: Karibuni kwenye kasri la Dhow!

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Joseph na Shamila wanatumia vyeti gani kusafiri, na kwa nini hawana vitambulisho vya Tanzania?
2. Wageni wanaweza kula chakula cha mchana kuanzia saa ngapi?Shamila na Joseph wangependa kula vyakula gani na kwa nini?
3. Kwa nini Shamila na Joseph wanapanga kula kwenye migahawa iliyo karibu badala ya kula chakula cha mchana na jioni kwenye hoteli ya Dhow Palace?
4. Shamila na Joseph wanapenda vyakula gani vya kitamaduni?
5. Ni vyakula gani vyepesi vinaweza kupatikana kwenye mikahawa ya kisasa mjini Stone Town?



Zoezi B

One student in the class should play the receptionist and check everyone into their rooms. If the class is large, another student (or the teacher) can also help out with the check-in process.

Zoezi C

You have checked into your hotel and the room you have been given is unacceptable. Call down to the front desk and tell them what is wrong and ask to have it fixed or to move you to a different room.

Zoezi D



After having lunch in a local restaurant at Stone town, Shamila and Joseph have a short discussion with the waiter about other entertainment options they could participate in, apart from Sauti za Busara. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Mhudumu: Ninatumai mmefurahia chakula chetu. Karibuni sana hapa Stone Town na kwenye mgahawa wetu wa Pemba. Sisi tunafahamika sana kwa chakula chenye afya ambacho ni cha asili ya kihindi na Kiafrika.

Shamila: Ndiyo, chakula chenu ni kitamu sana, ingawa ni ghali kidogo.

Mhudumu: Wapishi wetu wana tajriba ya upishi ya miaka mingi kwenye hoteli za kifahari nchini.

Joseph: Asante sana. Tunashukuru kwa huduma yenu nzuri. Tafadhali tungependa kujua tunaweza kujiburudisha wapi?

Mhudumu: Inategemea mnapenda kufanya nini na mko hapa kwa muda gani.

Joseph: Tuko hapa Stone Town kwa siku tatu na tunapenda burudani za aina tofauti tofauti.

Mhudumu: Kama mngependa kwenda kwenye ukumbi wa sinema kutazama filamu, ninafikiri mtafurahia Old Fort inayofahamika kama Ngome Kongwe au House of Wonders. Hii ni nyumba iliyojengwa mwaka wa 1700 na Waarabu.

Shamila: Tutahitaji kutembelea Ngome Kongwe. Je, wanaonyesha filamu kila siku?

Mhudumu: Ndiyo, wao huonyesha filamu kila siku. Mtaweza kuona filamu maarufu za Tanzania na za kisasa.

Joseph: Je, kunazo klabu zingine ambazo tunaweza kwenda kucheza densi?

Mhudumu: Kuna kIlabu kadha wa kadha. Sijaenda kwenye klabu yoyote bado lakini rafiki zangu husema kuwa Dharma Lounge ni maarufu sana kwa kuwa kuna mziki wa Jazz, Raga, Pop, Taarab, Bongo na baadhi ya miziki ya kisasi kipya na huwalika wasanii kutoka Kenya kama Sauti Sol, Bobi Wine kutoka Uganda, Diamond Platnumz anayetoka hapa Tanzania, na Fally Ipua kutokaSerikali ya Kidemokrasia ya Kongo.

Joseph: Kilabu cha Dharma Lounge kiko wapi?

Mhudumu: Kilabu Cha Dharma Lounge kiko katika mtaa wa mkunazini. Derevawa Teksi wanajua Dharma Lounge kwa kuwa ni kilabu maarufu sana kwa watalii hasa vijana.

Joseph: Rafiki yangu Shamila pia anapenda kutazama miereka na bendi za muziki. Je, tunaweza kuipata burudani hii hapa mjini?

Mhudumu: Sauti za Busara ndiyo sehemu mwafaka zaidi kutazama na kusikiliza bendi tofauti za muziki katika Afrika Mashariki na Afrika ya kati. Wanamuziki kutoka sehemu zingine barani Afrika pia huja kuwatumbuiza wageni. Sijui kuhusu miereka lakini nitaulizia kisha nitawapigia simu. Nambari ya simu yako ni gani?

Joseph: Tunajua kuhusu Sauti za Busara na tushahifadhi tiketi ya kwenda kutazama tamasha yao kuanzia leo jioni.

Mhudumu: Vizuri sana. Nina uhakika mtafurahia tamasha hii maarufu sana.

Joseph: Lakini hatujui kuhusu miereka na klabu za densi. Unaweza kutufahamisha kuhusu burudani hizi na mahali wanakofanyia maonyesho haya kupitia nambari 0243322407.

Mhudumu: Nitawajulisha kuhusu michezo ya miereka punde nitakapojua sehemu zinazoonyesha mchezo huu.

Joseph: Nitashukuru sana. Tutaonana siku nyingine. Kwaheri kwa sasa

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Mgahawa wa *Pemba* ni maarufu kwa chakula kipi?
2. Mhudumu anawashauri Joseph na Shamila kwenda kutazama filamu wapi?
3. Ni filamu gani zinazoonyeshwa kwenye Ngome Kongwe?
4. Kilabu cha Dharma Lounge kiko mtaa gani na kwa nini kiko maarufu?
5. Shamila anapenda burudani gani?

Zoezi E

Work with a partner to come up with a list of fun things to do in your hometown. You will then share your lists with the class and come up with as many suggestions as you can for people who might visit.

Zoezi F

Find out what everyone in the class likes to do in their free time and plan a class outing for this weekend. Be prepared to explain why the entertainment option you like would be the best choice. You will need to highlight the good parts of your choice and the bad parts of what others are suggesting.

Zoezi G

Joseph receives a phone call from the receptionist at Dharma lounge and asks about the activities that are available. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Mhudumu: Hujambo? Ninakupigia simu kutoka kilabu cha Dharma Lounge. Ningependa kuongea na Joseph?

Joseph: Sijambo. Mimi ni Joseph. Habari gani?

Mhudumu: Salama. Mimi ni mpokezi hapa na nimepewa nambari yako na mhudumu kutoka Mgahawa wa Ma shaa Allah. Unamfahamu? Mlikula chakula leo mchana kwenye mgahawa wao.

Joseph: Ndiyo ninafahamu mhudumu huyo. Tulitaka kujua mahali ambapo kuna maonyesho ya miereka na densi.

Mhudumu: Hapa kilabu cha Dharma Lounge utafurahia maonyesho yetu. Sisi ni maarufu sana.

Joseph: Asante sana. Tiketi za kutazama maonyesho zinapatikana vipi?

Mhudumu: Mtahudhuria maonyesho mkiwa watu wangapi?

Joseph: Tutakuwa watu wawili. Mimi na rafiki yangu.

Mhudumu: Huwa tuna tiketi za aina mbili; ya kwanza ni tiketi ya watu muhimu na ile ya watu wa kawaida.

Joseph: Kuna tofauti gani kati ya tiketi hizi mbili?

Mhudumu: Kwanza, Viti vya watu muhimu ni vikubwa na vina starehe zake, pili ukiwa na tiketi ya watu muhimu unaweza kuketi sehemu ambayo ni nzuri sana kutazama maonyesho ilhali tiketi za kawaida ni zile ambazo hazina starehe nyingi sana na pia huna uwezo mzuri wa kutazama maonyesho kwa uwazi.

Joseph: Asante kwa maelezo yako. Bei ya tiketi hizi ni gani?

Mhudumu: Tiketi ya watu muhimu ambayo ni bei ghali ina gharimu shilingi elfu thelathini za Tanzania nayo tiketi ya kawaida ina gharimu shilingi elfu ishirini.

Joseph: Sioni tofauti kubwa kati ya tiketi hizi mbili kwa hivyo basi tungependa kununua tiketi mbili za watu muhimu . Je, nitazilipiaje tiketi hizi mbili ?

Mhudumu: Utanipa majina yenu, ulipe kisha nitawakatia tiketi ambazo mtazichukua kesho mkija kutazama filamu.

Joseph: Tutazilipiaje tiketi hizo ?

Mhudumu: Mnaweza kulipa kwa pesa tasilimu kwa kuwa huwa hatupokei malipo ya simu.

Joseph: Sawasawa.

Mhudumu: Majina yenu ni yapi, ili niyaandike kwenye tiketi?

Joseph: Jina langu ni Joseph na rafiki yangu anaitwa Shamila.

Mhudumu: Mngependa maonyesho ya saa ngapi?

Joseph: Tungependa kuona maonyesho hayo kesho asubuhi kwa kuwa kwenye ratiba yetu tushahifadhi tiketi ya kwenda kuhudhuria tamasha ya mwaka huu ya Sauti za Busara masaa ya jioni.

Mhudumu: Usiwe na shaka maanake maonyesho yetu ya siku ya kesho ni ya asubuhi kwa hivyo yataingiliani vema na ratiba yenu.

Joseph: Asante sana kwa muda wako. Tutajiandaa kufika kesho kwenye maonyesho.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Kilabu cha Dharma Lounge ni maarufu kwa maonyesho yepi?
2. Ni kwa nini Joseph na Shamila waliamua kununua tiketi za bei ghali?
3. Tiketi za aina gani zinapatikana kwenye kilabu cha Dharma Lounge?
4. Mbona Joseph anasisitiza kuwa maonyesho hayo yawe asubuhi badala ya jioni?
5. Joseph na Shamila walilipa tiketi zao kwa kwa njia ipi?

Zoezi H

Work with a partner to search the web for popular clubs in Nairobi that you might go to this weekend. Find out if they have shows, food and drinks specials, and whether they are budget friendly. Be prepared to share the names of the clubs that you found and a brief description.

Zoezi I

As a follow up activity, present your top two choices to the class. In your presentation, compare and contrast the two choices and indicate which is your preferred choice and why. At the end the class will vote on the best choice.

Zoezi J

Shamila has the afternoon free and finds the *Shanga gift shop* online. She calls the phone number on the website to ask for directions.



kushoto



moja kwa moja



kulia

Shamila: Hello, je hili ni duka la Shanga?

Mhudumu: Ndiyo hili ni duka la Shanga? Ungependa nikusaidiaje?

Shamila: Mimi ni mgeni hapa na ningependa kulitembelea duka lenu la Shanga. Niko katika kasri la Dhow. Samahani sioni duka lenu kwenye ramai ya Google. Je, unaweza kunipa maelekezo ya kufika huko? Singependa kupotea.

Mhudumu: Bila shaka. Kutoka kwenye lango la kasri la Dhow unahitaji kuelekea upande wa kulia. Nenda moja kwa moja kupitia barabaraya Uhuru, barabara ya Magufuli, na barabara ya Samia na Umoja. Hapo utakuta kivukio cha watu wanaosafiri kwa miguu. Vuka barabara kuelekea upande wa kulia. Endelea na barabara ya Umoja hadi uone benki Kuu ya Equity katika mkono wa kulia. Mbele ya benki Kuu ya Equity utaona duka kubwa ambalo linaitwa Uzuri mall.

Shamila: Je, duka la Shanga liko ndani ya Uzuri Mall.

Mhudumu: Ndiyo duka hili liko ndani ya Uzuri Mall. Duka liko katika orofa ya tatu. Ukifika orofa ya tatu utaona ni duka la kwanza mkono wa kushoto kutoka kwa ngazi.

Shamila: Asante sana kwa maelezo yako mazuri.. Ninashukuru sana. Ninapanga kulitembelea duka hilo leo mchana.

Mhudumu: Karibu sana.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila anataka kwenda wapi?
2. Kutembea kutoka kwenye Hoteli ya kasri la Dhowe hadi dukani inachukua muda gani kwa miguu?
3. Unahitaji kupita barabara zipi kabla ya kufika kwa barabara ya Umoja?
4. Duka ambalo Shamila analitafuata liko wapi kutoka kwenye benki Kuu ya Equity?
5. Eleza jinsi ya kufika kwenye duka ambalo Shamila analitafuta kutoka eneo la kuingilia.

Zoezi K



In the evening Joseph and Shamila head to the Dharma Lounge. After walking for a short distance, they decide to ask for directions so that they don't get lost.

Shamila: Shikamoo mama?

Mkazi: Marahaba mwanangu.

Shamila: Sisi si wakazi wa hapa na tunaomba utuelekeze namna ya kufika kilabu cha Dharma Lounge kwa kuwa sisi ni wageni hapa na na hatujui njia ya kwenda huko.

Mkazi: Ndiyo ninaweza kuwaelekeza jinsi mtakavyofika Dharma Lounge kwa kuwa mimi ni mkaazi wa maeneo haya.

Shamila: Tutashukuru sana kwa msaada wako. Ni umbali gani kutoka hapa?

Mkazi: Kutoka hapa mlipo mpaka kilabu cha Dharma Lounge ni masafa ya kutembea kwa miguu na ni mwendo wa kilomita tatu.

Shamila: Kwa hivyo si mbali! Njia rahisi ya kuelekea huko ni ipi?

Mkazi: Kutoka hapa tulipo mnahitaji kutembea nusu kilomita, kisha mtaona kibao ambacho kimeandikwa " Karibu kwa daktari wa Mapenzi". Mkishaona kibao hiki, pinda kulia na muendelee na barabara hiyo ya lami kwa kilomita mbili. Upande wa kushoto mtaona chumba cha ghorofa ya rangi ya manjano. Mkishaona chumba hiki pinda kushoto na muendelee kwa kilomita moja. Hapo mtaona lango lenye mandhari ya kupendeza na kisha kuna tangi kubwa la maji lenye rangi ya dhahabu. Pia mtaona ukuta mrefu wa mawe ambao umezunguka nyumba kadha na lango lililoandikwa "Karibu Ulimwengu wa Dharma Lounge" kwa maandishi ya rangi nyekundu.

Shamila: Asante sana. Ninatumaini hatutapotea. Ninaona si safari ndefu kutoka hapa.

Mkazi: Karibu sana dada na safari njema. Mtafika baada ya dakika chache tu.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Kwa nini Shamila na Joseph walihitaji kuelekezwa kwenda kilabu cha Dharma Lounge?
2. Ni umbali gani kutoka mgahawa wa Dhow Palace kwenda kilabu cha Dharma Lounge?
3. Baada ya kuona kibao kilichoandkiwa "*Karibu kwa Daktari wa Mapenzi*", Shamila na Joseph watahitaji kutembea kwa kilomita ngapi?
4. Chumba cha ghorofa kiko upande gani na ni cha rangi gani?
5. Kuna maandishi gani kwenye lango la kilabu cha Dharma Lounge?



Zoezi L

Your teacher will give you a map of your campus. Starting at a location that your teacher specifies, give directions to a place of your choosing to your partner. Your partner then needs to give you directions from that place to another place on campus. Repeat the process at least three times. Be prepared to ask questions for clarification.

Zoezi M

Pick out the best example of the directions you created in the last activity and write them out with your partner. Then swap your directions with another group to see if you can guess the place the other group has in mind.

Zoezi N

A few of your classmates are coming to visit you by taxi and call you on the phone because they have gotten lost. Find out where they ate and provide directions on how they can get to your place.

Zoezi O

Look at the map below, including the points on the compass. Once you have read the explanation below the map, answer the questions that follow.

Mfano:

1. (Nchi ya) Ethiopia iko kaskazini (mwa nchi) ya Kenya.
2. (Nchi ya) Kenya iko kusini (mwa nchi*)* ya Ethiopia.
3. (Nchi ya) Somalia iko mashariki (mwa nchi) ya Kenya.
4. (Nchi ya Uganda) iko magharibi (mwa nchi) ya Kenya.
5. (Nchi ya) Angola iko kusini magharibi (mwa nchi) ya Ethiopia.



Please note in the examples above that the geographical reference (country, city, etc.) is optional in most cases, but is required when following *kusini*.

Describe where each of these countries are located relative to Tanzania.

1. Chad
2. Niger
3. Botswana
4. Senegal
5. Zambia
6. Egypt
7. Uganda
8. Namibia
9. Ghana
10. Rwanda



Zoezi P

You meet a new student who would like to know a bit more about where you live. Roleplay the situation with the curious new acquaintance. A few questions below have been listed to get you started but see how many more you can come up with.

- Unatoka wapi?
- Unatoka sehemu gani Marekani?
    - Magharibi ya kati? Pwani? Pwani ya magharibi? Pwani ya mashariki? Kusini?
- Unaishi sehemu gani ya Kansas?
- Je, sehemu hiyo iko karibu na mji wa Kansas?



Zoezi Q

When they get to the Dharma Lounge, Joseph and Shamila go to the reception to pay for the tickets they have reserved. Read the conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Joseph: Hujambo? Ninaitwa Joseph na mwenzangu hapa anaitwa shamila. Tulikuwa tumehifadhiwa tiketi mbili za maonyesho na tungependa kuzilipia tiketi hizo.

Mhudumu: Sijambo. Ninakukumbuka. Tiketi zenu ziko hapa. Kwa jumla mnahitaji kulipa shilingi elfu sitini.

Joseph: Hela ndizo hizi hapa. Tunashukuru kwa mapokezi yenu mema.

Mhudumu: Karibuni sana. Subirini kidogo niwapatie mtu atakayewaelekeza kwenye viti vyenu.

Joseph: Asante sana kwa huduma yenu nzuri.

Shamila: Joseph ratiba yetu ya kesho asubuhi ni ipi?

Joseph: Kwa kweli sina mpango wowote.

Jirani: Poleni kwa kuingilia maongezi yenu. Ninaomba kupendekeza kama mnaweza kuhudhuria mechi kati yatimu ya *Harambee Stars* ya kenya na timu ya Yanga ya Tanzania . Mechi itafanyika kesho na itaanza muda wa asubuhi. Hizi ni timu mbili bora zaidi kwenye soka katika eneo la Afrika Mashariki.

Joseph: Hilo ni wazo nzuri kwa kuwa tunapenda sana kandanda. Mimi na rafiki yangu tungependa kutazama timu hizi pinzani. Je, unajua, mchuano huo utafanyika wapi, a saa ngapi na ni vipi mtu anaweza kupata tiketi za kuutazama?

Jirani: Mchuano huo utakuwa katika uwanja wa *Amaan*, kuanzia saa tatu asubuhi hadi saa tano na nusu asubuhi. tiketi zinanunuliwa mtandaoni kupitia kupiga simu ukitumia nambari ifuatayo *243# halafu ufuate maelekezo. Tiketi zenyewe ni za bei nafuu sana kwa kuwa kama unanunua tiketi zaidi ya moja, unapata punguzo la asilimia hamsini kwa tiketi ya pili.

Shamila: Tiketi moja inauzwa pesa ngapi?

Jirani: Tiketi moja inauzwa shilingi elfu kumi tu. Kwa hivyo, iwapo mko watu wawili mtalipa shilingi elfu kumi na tano peke yake.

Shamila: Hiyo ni bei nafuu sana. Asante.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila na Joseph walihitaji kulipa pesa ngapi kwa tiketi mbili za maonyesho kwenye Dharma Lounge?
2. Ni timu gani zitakazokuwa zikicheza na mechi inatarijiwa kuanza saa ngapi?
3. Kwa nini Shamila na Joseph waliuziwa tiketi kwa bei nafuu?
4. Mchuano huu utachezwa katika uwanja upi?
5. Tiketi hizi zitanunuliwa kwa njia gani?



Zoezi R

Pretend that you accompanied Joseph and Shamila to the Dharma Lounge to watch the dancing and wrestling show. You found everything too loud, and it was so hot and stuffy that you had to leave before the show ended. Call the Dharma Lounge manager to share your experience and ask whether you might get a complimentary ticket to attend another show.

Zoezi S

The day after the concert Joseph and Shamila decided to go to *Amaan* stadium to attend a football match between *Harambee Stars* and *Yanga*. As they wait for the match to kick off they have a conversation with one of the fans. The fan gives them the history of both teams and how they have been competing since the start of the league and their cultural diversity.

Shabiki: Mko vipi wenzangu?

Joseph: Tuko poa.

Shabiki: Karibuni kwenye mechi ya leo. Ni mara yenu ya kwanza kuhudhuria mechi kwenye uwanja huu au mmeshahudhuria michuano hapo awali?

Joseph: La hasha! Hii ndiyo mara yetu ya kwanza.

Shabiki: Nyinyi ni wageni hapa Zanzibar?

Joseph: Ndiyo, sisi ni wageni kutoka marekani na tumekuja hapa kusoma Kiswahili na utamaduni wa Tanzania.

Shabiki: Karibuni sana nchini mwetu. Mimi ninafahamika kama Sudi. Je, ninaweza kuwafahamu?

Joseph: Bila shaka. Jina langu ni Joseph na mwenzangu hapa anaitwa Shamila. Kama n nilivyokueleza hapo awali sisi ni wanafunzi humu nchini. Ningependa kujua kwa nini mashabiki wameketi pande mbili tofauti na wana mashati ya rangi tofauti?

Shabiki: Asante sana kwa swali lako. Kwanza kabisa ningependa kukueleza kwamba timu hizi mbili zinawakilisha mataifa ya Kenya na Tanzania. Hivyo basi hii ni mechi kati ya mahafali wakubwa kutoka zamani na ndiyo maana mashabiki wameketi pande tofauti ili kushangilia mataifa yao na pia kuzuia vurugu baina ya mashabiki wakati timu moja inapoipiku nyingine mwishoni mwa mechi.

Joseph: Tunakushukuru sana kwa maelezo hayo mema.

Shabiki: Karibu. Ni vema kufahamu kuwa timu hizi mbili zina changamoto za kibinafsi.

Joseph: Je, timu hizi zina changamoto zipi?

Shabiki: Tukianza na timu ya Taifa ya Harambee stars kutoka nchini Kenya, ingawa timu hii ina wachezaji wenye tajriba ya juu zaidi, wao hulipwa mishahara midogo sana. Kwa hivyo huwabidi wachezaji wenye talanta kuhamia mataifa ya ulaya ili kupata mishahara mikubwa. Wengine hubadilisha hata uraia wao.

Joseph: Je, wizara ya michezo haijaibua njia mwafaka za kuhakikisha kuwa wachezaji wanlipwa mishahara itakayowawezesha kujikimu maishani?

Shabiki: Mbinu tofauti zinaweza kubuniwa ila wizara hii imetawaliwa na ufisadi. Hii ndiyo sababu kuu wachezaji hawalipwi mishahara inayofaa.

Joseph: Kutokana na maelezo yako, sasa ninaelewa kwa nini wachezaji hao hawana budi ila kuhamia nchi za nje.

Shabiki: Bila shaka.

Joseph: Asante sana kwa maelezo hayo mema. Tumefurahia kutazama mechi hii na tungependa kurejea hotelini sasa.

Shabiki: Karibuni na kwaheri.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Je,hii ni mara ya ngapi Joseph na Shamila kuhudhuria mechi hii?
2. Je, ni kwa nini mashabiki wanaketi pande tofauti?
3. Eleza ni changamoto zipi zinazozikumba timu hizi mbili.
4. Kwa nini wachezaji huhamia nchi za ulaya?
5. Ni mbinu zipi zinaweza kubuniwa ili kupambana na ufisadi uliomo kwenye wizara za michezo?

Zoezi T

Shamila and Joseph meet a student from Kenya at the festival and discuss music. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Shamila: Ndugu yangu vipi?

John: Salama sana. Mambo?

Shamila: Sina neno. Ninaona umevaa tisheti yenye bendera ya rangi za nchi ya Kenya. Unatoka nchi ya Kenya?

John: Ndiyo. Ninatoka nchi ya Kenya. Wewe na mwenzako mnatoka nchi gani?

Shamila: Sisi ni wamarekani. Jina langu ni Shamila na mwenzangu anaitwa Joseph na sisi zote ni wanafunzi. Tamasha ya mwaka huu imekuwa nzuri sana. Hii ni mara yako ya kwanza au umehudhuria tamasha zilizoandaliwa miaka iliyopita?

John: Hii si mara yangu ya kwanza kuhudhuria tamasha hizi . Nimekuwa nikihudhuria tamasha hizi kwa zaidi ya miaka minne sasa. Ninatoka Kenya na ni bei ghali kusafiri kutoka nchi ya Kenya. Imenigharimu zaidi ya shilingi elfu tano. Nilisafiri kwa basi.

Shamila: Pole kwa safari yako. Ninajua sherehe hii ni ghali sana. Ninajua kusafiri kwa ndege pia ni bei ghali zaidi. Unahitaji kutumia zaidi ya shilingi elfu kumi na tano.

John: Ni kweli kabisa. Mimi kwa kawaida husafiri kwa basi ninaposafiri ndani ya Afrika Mashariki.

Shamila: Tamasha hii ina wanamuziki wengi maarufu. Nimependa sana Bendi ya Sauti Sol. Je, wao wanatoka Kenya?

John: Ndiyo wanamuziki hao wanatoka nchi ya kenya na bendi yao ina wanamuziki wanne. Wao huimba muziki wa aina ya Afro-pop. Wamepata tuzo nyingi sana za kimataifa.

Shamila: Ninafahamu kwamba wamashikiri katika tamasha za muziki Uropa na pia Marekani. Ninafikiri miaka mitatu iliyopita walikuja mjini Chicago lakini tiketi zilikuwa ghali sana sikuweza kuhudhuria tamasha hiyo.

John: Hapa kiingilio cha tamasha si ghali sana. Ninajua Sauti sol watakuwa katika tamasha ya wiki ya utamaduni katika chuo kikuu cha Kenyatta mwezi ujao. Iwapo mtasafiri Kenya ningependa mhudhurie tamasha hiyo

Shamila: Kuna uwezekano tutakuwa Kenya mwezi wa Juni. Tungependa kuhudhuria tamasha hii pamoja na kutembelea vivutio vingine nchini.

John: Itakuwa furaha yangu kukutana na nyinyi tena. Nitawapa nambari yangu. Nambari yangu ya simu ya Kenya na pia kwenye Wasapu ni +254711365834.

Shamila: Asante. Tumeihifadhi kwenye simu zetu. Tutawasiliana inshallah.

John: Vema sana. Kwaherini kwa sasa.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. John hutumia usafiri gani anaposafiri ndani ya Afrika mashariki?
2. Je, hii ni mara ya kwanza ya John kuhudhuria tamasha hii?
3. Bendi ya Sauti Sol huimba aina gani ya muziki?
4. Kwa nini Shamila hakuhudhuria tamasha ya bendi ya Sauti Sol mjini Chicago?
5. Shamila na Joseph walitarajia kuwa Kenya mwezi gani?

Zoezi U

Read the following article on Sauti za Busara adapted from the online newspaper *Mwananchi* (mwananchi.co.tz) and answer the questions that follow.



Sauti za Busara 2022

Tangu mwaka 2004 ambao Tamasha la Sauti za Busara lilianzishwa, wanamuziki mashuhuri na wenye vipaji kutoka sehemu tofauti barani Afrika wamekuwa wakiwatumbuiza mashabiki. Kwa kawaida, Sauti ya Busara huwa inafanyika wiki ya pili ya mwezi wa Februari na mashabiki hufika mjini Stone Town kushiriki kwenye sherehe hii maarufu. Mada inayoangaziwa katika Tamasha la mwaka huu ni "Paza Sauti: Uwezeshaji wa Sauti za Wanawake kusikika". Kama kawaida, tamasha litafanyika katika mji wa Stone hapa Zanzibar lakini kutokana na idadi kubwa ya wageni wanaotajariwa kuhudhuria, tamasha limeandaliwa katika jumba la Ngome Kongwe kuanzia Februari 11 hadi 13. Umaarufu wa Sauti za Busara unaendelea kuongezeka kwa hivyo wasanii wengi wenye vipawa tofauti tofauti naikundi vya bendi tamasha kutoka sehemu tofauti barini Afrikawanatarajiwa kujibwaga kwa jukwaa kuonyesha umahiri wao na kuwatumbuiza mashabiki. Baadhi ya wanamuziki hao ni:

Sampa the Great ni mmoja wa wanamuziki wa Afrika na ni mzaliwa wa nchi ya Zambia lakini huwa anaishi nchini Australia. Yeye anayecheza muziki wa Hip Hop. Sampa amekuwa akihudhuria na kuwasilisha muziki wake kwenye Sauti za Busara kwa miaka mitano mfululizo. Muziki wake una muungano wa ushairi, Rap, Blue na hata Jazz kwa hivyo huwasisimua mashabiki vijana sana. Amepata sifa mbalimbali duniani na amwesalisha kwenye matamasha mengine makubwa na kuwavutia mashabiki kutokana na aina tofauti ya burudani ya nguvu, miondoko na sauti yake nzuri.

Vitali Maembe ni mwanamuziki wa Tanzania anayeheshimika nchini kote. Pia ana kipawa cha kupiga gitaa na kutunga nyimbo ambazo zinaibua mijadala yenye afya inayotarajiwa kuwafanya watu kutafuta suluhu kwa matatizo yanayowakabili kila siku. Muziki wake ni muunganowa ladha za bara na pwani na mashairi chokozi ya kuwataka

viongozi wala rushwa kubadilisha mienendo yao. Nyimbo zake zinawalenga viongozi ambao wanawaahidi raia kisha wanakosa kutimiza ahadi zao.

Msaki ni mwimbaji kutoka Afrika Kusini ambaye ni mtunzi na mwenye kipawa cha kusisimua na kuwasafirisha mashabiki kwenye dunia ya matumaini na matamanio.

Wamwiduka Band ni kundi la wanamuziki wanne waliounganа mwaka wa 2012 na sasa wamepata umaarufu ukanda mzima wa Afrika Mashariki. Wanaimba na kufanya maonyesho yanayosisimua umati katika vituo vya mabasi, masokoni na kwenye mabaa. Wao hujulikana kwa kucheza mziki wa asili kutoka Mbeya nchini Tanzania. Kundi hilo linajumuisha wanamuziki Brown Isaya ambaye anaongoza bendi kama mwimbaji mkuu na Adriano Wilson anayeshughulika na kupiga gitaa na chombo cha muziki cha banjo. Pia kuna Zakaria Michael ambaye anaimba kutokana na sauti yake nyororo, na ana kipawa cha kupiga ngoma kwa njia ya ustadi pamoja na Peter Mashaka anayepiga besi na babatoni.

Ben Pol ni mwanamuziki mashuhuri kutoka Tanzania, mwimbaji wa R & B mwenye sauti ya ubora wa juu na mtunzi wa nyimbo kadha wa kadha. Pia ana kipaji kinachokua kwa kasi katika anga za muziki za Afrika na kufikia sasa amepata tuzo mbalimbali na kutambulika kama mwimbaji hodari. Baadhi ya nyimbo ambazo amebuni na zinazoendelea kuvuma zaidi hasa katika Afrika Mashariki ni: 'Nikikupata', 'Number One Fan', 'Samboira', 'Maneno', 'Moyo Mashine', 'Pete' 'Jikubali', 'Wapo', 'Kidani' na ' Sikukuu'.

Seif Mwinyijuma Haji ni mwanamuziki kutoka Dar es Salaam ambaye ana umaarufu mkubwa kwa kuwa mmoja wa wanzilishi wa muziki wa singeli ambao ni fahari ya taifa. Ameshinda tuzo nyingi na anaendelea kutawala jukwaa la dansi barani Afrika.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo

1. Je, kauli mbiu ya tamasha ya sauti ya busara “Uwezeshaji wa Sauti za Wanawake kusikika” ina maana gani?
2. Tamasha la Sauti ya Busara litafanyika lini?
3. Kutakuwa na makundi mangapi ya wanamuziki ambayo yatawakilishwa kwenye tamasha hili?
4. Sampa the great ni mzaliwa wa nchi gani?
5. Lengo kubwa katika shughuli za muziki za Vitali Maembe ni lipi?
6. Mwamuziki Msaki ana kipawa kipi?
7. Wasanii wa Afrika Mashariki wanatofautiana au kufanana vipi na wasanii wa nchi yako?
8. Kuna vivutio gani vingine katika tamasha la Sauti ya Busara ya 2022?
9. Tamasha la kwanza la Sauti ya Busara lilifanyika mwaka gani?
10. Je, Bendi ya Mwaiduka wanaimbia miziki yao katika maeneo gani?

Zoezi V

Shamila and Joseph are getting ready for the concert the next day and are researching East African musicians. Watch the video from BBC News Swahili about Tanzanian musician Dipper Rato and answer the questions that follow.



tinyurl.com/bdf98zsy

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Msanii Dippaer Rato alisema mambo gani matatu kuhusu muziki wa reggae?
2. Ni nini kilimfanya msanii Diipper Rato kuuchagua muziki wa reggae?
3. Dipper Rato alisema ni aina gani ya miziki ambayo hupewa kipao mbele katika sehemu ya Afrika Mashariki?
4. Msanii huyu alikulia kwenye mazingira gani?
5. Msanii huyu alioanisha vipi shughuli zake kama balozi wa utalii na muziki?
6. Dipper Rato alitaja vivutio gani vya utalii nchini Tanzania?
7. Dipper Rato aliitumia mitandao gani ya kijamii na kwa njia gani?

Zoezi W

Using the playlist linked to the right or a similar list of East African popular music, find a song that interests you and research the song and the artist(s). Write a one- to two-page summary that provides some biographical detail about the artist(s) and the musical genre to which they belong. Compare the artist(s) to similar artists from your own culture. Be prepared to share your research with the class and to play the specific song so that your classmates get a sense of the artist(s). Remember that written assignments and oral presentations take different forms, so do not plan to just read your essay in front of the class.

tinyurl.com/v2t395t4

Key Vocabulary

Nouns

ada fee
Afrika Kaskazini North Africa
Afrika Kusini South Africa/southern Africa
Afrika Magharibi West Africa
Afrika Mashariki East Africa
Afrika ya kati Central Africa
ala instrument
bendi band
burudani entertainment
dira compass
jamii community
jimbo ya kusini southern states
kaskazini north
kaskazini magharibi northwest
kaskazini mashariki northeast
kati/katikati middle/center
kelele noise
kisiwa island
kivuka miguu zebra crossing
kusini south
kusini magharibi southwest
kusini mashariki southeast
lami tarmac road
magharibi west
magharibi ya kati Midwest
mashariki east
Mashariki ya kati Middle East
mbao wood
mdundo beat
michezo games
mila customs, manners
mipango/mikakati plans
msondo a musical instrument
mtalaam specialist
mtunzi composer
muziki music
mwimbaji singer
ngoma drum
njia/barabara road
pwani coast
pwani coast
pwani ya magharibi west coast
pwani ya mashariki east coast
sehemu part or side
sherehe celebration
shughuli activities
starehe enjoyment; relaxation
taarab Swahili music genre
umati crowd

uwanja wa michezo stadium
wimbo song

Verbs

-ambatana to go together
-anguka to fall down
-anzia to begin from
-cheza to play or dance
-fuata to follow
-geuka to turn
-gombana to quarrel
-imba to sing
-ingiliana to enjoin, intermingle
-kera to bother
-kulewa to get drunk
-pigana to fight
-pinda to turn
-ruka to jump
-sanyika to gather
-shangilia to cheer
-starehesha to make someone have fun/feel comfortable
-sukuma to push
-tembelea to visit.
-tunga to compose
-umati to crowd
-viringisha to roll something, shake your body when dancing
-vuka to cross
-vuta to pull
-vuta (sigara) to smoke (a cigarette)
-zingatia to bear in mind, consider
-zunguka to go around

Adjectives

bingwa champion
bora suitable or better
geni new
harufu smell
hodari skilled/expert
kali strong
karibu near
katili mean
kulia right
kushoto left
laini soft
maarufu famous
mbali far
mwororo smooth
nimpendaye sana favorite
safi cool

Prepositions

chini ya under, beneath, below
juu ya above, on top of, over
kabla ya before
kando ya beside, alongside
karibu na near/close
kati ya in between
katika in/inside
katikati center/in between
katikati in the middle
kisha then/and then
mbali na far from/far
mbele ya in front of, ahead
mpaka until
ndani ya inside of/in
nje ya outside of
nyuma ya behind
tangu from
toka since

Phrases

bei ghali expensive
bei rahisi/nafuu cheap
kukata na shoka to show the intensity of something
moja kwa moja straight
Muda gani? How long?
Ningependa… I would like…
Umewahi…? Have you ever…?

7.3 Safari katika vivutio vya Utalii

Zoezi A

Shamila and Joseph are reaching the end of their year abroad and are hoping to do some traveling during the time that they have left. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.


mlima


ufukwe


mji


bahari


jangwa


makavazi


mbuga za wanyama


masoko ya nje

Shamila: Vipi Joseph? Uko salama?

Joseph: Salama kabisa. Ninatumai unafurahia kipindi hiki ambapo chuo kikuu kimefungwa. Angalau unapata nafasi ya kupumzika.

Shamila: Ninafurahia sana kwa sababu ninataka kupumzika na pia ningependa kutalii sehemu chache humu nchini Tanzania kabla ya kumaliza masomo yangu ya nje ya nchi.

Joseph: Hiyo ni mipango mizuri. Kuna aina mbali mbali ya vivutio nchini humu ambavyo ninafikiri utavipenda. Mimi pia ningependa kuzuru nchi ya Tanzania kidogo kabla yakurudi Marekani.

Shamila: Je, una pendekezo lolote? Nina likizo ya wiki mbili tu. Ningependa kwenda kwa kivutio cha kwanza wiki ya kwanza ni cha pili kwenye wiki ya pili.

Joseph: Kuna vivutio mbalimbali nchini humu. Inategemea shughuli ambazo ungependa kufanya katika vivutio hivi. Kwa mfano unaweza kukwea mlima Kilimanjaro, kutembelea makavazi mbali mbali ya kihistoria, kutembelea miji ambayo ni maarufu kwa watalii, kwenda ufukweni au katika mbuga za wanyama.

Shamila: Kweli ninaona kuna vivutio vingi sana nchini humu. Ningependa kukwea mlima Kilimanjaro. Kuna kundi la wanafunzi wengine darasani ambao wanapanga kukwea mlima Kilimanjaro kwa siku sita.

Joseph: Bi. Fatuma aliniambia kuwa sisi vijana tutafurahia sana shughuli hiyo. Yeye alipenda sana kukwea mlima Kilimanjaro miaka mingi iliyopita alipokuwa mchanga. Je ungependa kufanya nini siki ya pili?

Shamila: Baada ya shughuli ngumu ya kukwea mlima, ningependa kwenda ufukweni katika kisiwa cha Zanzibar. Kisiwa cha Zanzibar ni maarufu kwa starehe.

Joseph: Bila shaka utafurahia kwenda kwenye Kisiwa cha Zanzibar. Katika kisiwa cha Unguja pia kuna vivutio vingine vingi kwa mfano ufukwe wa Paje, mji wa Stone Town, Kuza Cave, Jozani National Park, na Prison Island.

Shamila: Kwa kweli kuna vivutio vingi vya kupendeza nchini humu. Ni wazi kuwapahala popote kati ya kukwea Mlima Kilimanjaro na kutembelea ufukwe wa Paje ni bora na ningependa kwenda sehemu zote mbili. Pia tunaweza kuangalia vivutio ambavyo ni vya bei nafuu ambavyo vinapendwa na watalii wengi. Kwa hivyo tutahitaji kufanya utafiti zaidi kwenye mtandao kuhusu vivutio hivi kabla ya kupanga safari yetu.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo kwa kueleza iwapo ni kweli au si kweli.

1. Shamila wamefunga chuo kwa muda wa wiki nne?
2. Shamila pamoja na wanafunzi wenzake hawangependa kukwea mlima Kenya kipindi hiki cha likizo.
3. Bi Fatuma alimwambia Joseph alipenda kufanya nini alipokuwa mchanga?
4. Shamila na wenzake watatembelea kiswa cha unguja wiki ya tatu ya likizo.
5. Shamila anapendekeza wasome zaidi kuhusu vivutio katika kisiwa cha unguja na sehemu zingine kwa nini?



Zoezi B

Poll three of four classmates to find out their preferences for places to visit during a study abroad trip to East Africa. Report the preferences of two of your classmates and answer any follow up questions that your classmates might have.

Zoezi C

Shamila meets with her classmate to catch up after the semester. During their meeting they discuss the hike to Mt. Kilimanjaro that they are planning with a group of classmates. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Funke: Shamila, habari za jioni?

Shamila: Salama sana Funke. Habari za likizo?

Funke: Nzuri sana. Ninafurahia sana likizo hii.

Shamila: Ninatazamia sana safari yetu ya kukwea mlima Kilimanjaro. Huu ni mlima mrefu zaidi katika bara la Afrika. Je unajua kimo cha mlima huu?

Funke: Nilikuwa nimeangalia kwenye tovuti. Mlima huo una kimo cha mita elfu tano, mia nane na tisini na tano.

Shamila: Ningependa kukwea mlima hadi nifike kwenye kilele chake. Nimeona kwenye tovuti kuwa kuna njia tatu za kuweza kuukwea mlima huu. Kuna njia ya Lemosho, Macheme, Rongai, na Marangu. Unaweza kutumia kati ya siku tano na tisa kuukwea milima huo. Ninafikiri njia zote zinaweza kutufikisha kwenye kilele. Njia hizi zina bei tofauti. Ninaona kukwea kwa siku saba ni dola elfu moja mia nane na sitini.

Funke: Je, bei hiyo ni ya kila mtalii e? Je, tukisafiri kama kundi bei itakuwa ipi?

Shamila: Sina uhakika. Ninafikiri tunaweza kupiga simu ili tuzungumze na wahudumu wa kampuni ya *Kilimanjaro on Foot*.

Funke: Ni sawa tunaweza kuwapigia simu baadaye. Ninafikiri tunaweza kuondoka kwenda mjini Moshi siku ya Jumapili na kurejea Dar es Salaam siku ya Jumapili.

Shamila: Ninakubaliana na pendekezo halo. Nitazungumza na Adila, Juma, Funke na Hani ili tuikamilisha mipango yetu. Tutahitaji kukubaliana wakati wa kuondoka katika kituo cha basi. Tutatumia gari la binafsi kuelekea huko.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila na Funke wanapanga kuanza safari yako siku gani?
2. Kimo cha mlima Kilimanjaro ni mita ngapi?
3. Gharama ya kukwea mlima Kilimanjaro ni ipi?
4. Kuna njia ngapi za kwenda kwenye kilele cha mlima Kilimanjaro?
5. Shamila na Joseph watasafiri pamoja na nani wakienda kuukwea Mlima Kilimanjaro?

Zoezi D

During a trip to national parks in East Africa, you and a group of classmates plan to make a few side trips as well. Browse the web and take notes about smaller attractions to visit during your trip.

Zoezi E

Discuss the smaller attractions that you found in the previous activity with a partner to see which of you found the best options. Be prepared to persuade your partner that your choices are the best, but you will need to select one attraction that you can agree upon.

Zoezi F

Share with your class the attraction that you and your partner have decided to visit. Indicate why you chose that particular attraction. Be prepared to answer your classmates' questions.

Zoezi G

Review the details of the itinerary for a three-day tour of Mount Kilimanjaro and answer the questions that follow.

Siku ya kwanza



Wageni watatembea kwa muda wa saa sita. Baada ya kiamsha kinywa utaondoka katika msitu wa mvua and kuingia katika sehemu ya mimea. Utavuka vijito vingi na utatembea kwenye miambi kuelekea katika tambarare ya Shira ambayo inakuelekeza kwenye kambi ya Shira ambayo itakuwa kimo cha mita elfu tatu na mia nane na arobaini. Hapa kuna maandhari mazuri ya ufukwe wa magharibi. Wahudumu wa kampuni huenda mapema kabla ya wageni na huandaa vinywaji na kuchemsha maji ya kuoga. Baada ya kuwasili katika kambi ya Mchame, wageni huoga na kupumzika na kula vyakula vya jioni. Wageni wanahitaji kuwa tayari kustahimili baridi kali kwa sababu hali ya joto huwa chini ya centigredi sufuri. Kwa kawaida tunawapa wageni majiko kuwapasha joto katika hema au wakati mwingine tunawasha moto nje ili wageni wasipate baridi.

Siku ya pili

Wageni watembea kwa muda wa saa saba. Baada ya kiamsha kinywa utaondoka mazingira ya Moorland na kuingia katika jangwa lenye mazingira ya mawe. Baada ya kutembea kwa saa matano kuelekea sehemu ya mashariki utakutana na mnara wa LAVA ambao uko katika kimo cha mita elfu nne mia sita na thelathini. Wageni wataandaliwa chakula cha mchana. Wageni wanaweza kupanda mnara wa Lava iwapo hali ya hewa ni nzuri. Kwa wakati huu ni kawaida wageni kuanza kuhisi athari za miinuko ya juu zaidi mwilini kwa mfano maumivu ya kichwa, upungufu wa pumzi, kupata kichefuchefu na wakati mwingine kutapika.



Baada ya chakula cha mchana utashuka kutoka kwa mnara wa Lava ambao uko kimo mita elfu nne, mia sita na thelathini kuelekea kwenye kambi ya Barranco ambayo iko kimo mita elfu tatu mia tisa na hamsini. Kushuka kimo cha mita elfu sita mia nane kunawapa wageni nafasi ya kupumzisha miili yao na pia kuruhusu miili yao kuwa imara kwa viwango vya juu vya hewa . Kushuka au kuteremka kwenda kambini huchukua mwendo wa saa mbili. Maji ya kunywa na chakula cha jioni kitaandaliwa kwa wageni wote wakati huu. Wageni watakula chakula cha jioni wakistarehe na kuangalia jinsi jua linavyotua.

Siku ya tatu

Karibu kwa siku kuu na ya mwisho ya kuukwea mlima Kilimanjaro. Leo tutakwea kimo cha mita elfu moja. Mjipe moyo na muwe na ujasiri ili tuweze kuushinda ukuta wa Barranco. Baada ya kiamsha kinywa tutaanza kuukwea mlima. Utakapopanda hadi kilele cha Baranco utaweza kuona Heim Glacier ambayo inaonekana juu ya mawingu. Njia hii inazunguka juu na chini ya chimbuko la Karanga.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Wageni watatembea umbali wa kilomita ngapi siku ya kwanza?
2. Wageni watakapoelekea kwenye kambi ya Mchame watapitia katika mandhari gani?
3. Hali joto huwa kiwango gani unapoelekea kilele cha mlima?
4. Safari ya siku ya pili huwa na changamoto gani?
5. Safari ya siku ya tatu itachukua muda wa siku ngapi?
6. Kwa nini wageni wengi huwa na uoga kusafiri siku ya tatu?



Zoezi H

In pairs review the website of Kilimanjaro on Foot (kilimanjaroonfoot.com) and come up with at least six questions that you would like to have answered as you plan your itinerary.



Zoezi I

Shamila calls the Kilimanjaro on Foot tour company to ask a few questions about the Mount Kilimanjaro Trek. Listen to her conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila na wenzake wataanzia safari yao wapi?
2. Siku ya kwanza wageni watafanya nini kabla ya kuanza kuukwea mlima wa Kilimanjaro?
3. Wageni wakifika katika kambi ya Machame wataweza kulala wapi?
4. Wageni watafika kambi ya Machema saa ngapi?
5. JNi athari gani ambayo watalii wanaweza kumbana nayo wanapoukwea mlima wa Kilimanjaro?
6. Mhudumu atawasaidia wageni vipi kujizuia na baridi usiku?
7. Wageni watafanya nini baada ya kufika katika kambi ya Machame kabla ya kula chakula cha jioni?
8. Wageni watapoukwea mlima, watapumzika baada ya saa ngapi?
9. Je, kuna sehemu gani za kulala kwa wapiga kambi?
10. Kwa nini kambi imezungukwa na ua wenye umeme?



Zoezi J

Decide with a partner what place in East Africa you would like to visit and come up with a list of 10 questions that you might want to ask a tour company.



Zoezi K

Now switch partners and role play where you are both the tourist and the tour company. Make sure to mention the place you are planning to visit and the proposed time at the beginning of the conversation.



Zoezi L

During your hike to Mount Kenya, you start to feel unwell. The tour staff is available to provide medical support, but you decide to call your personal doctor to inform him/her how you are feeling and to provide information about the treatment that you have received and the precautions you are taking. Roleplay the scenario.



Zoezi M

During your hike you write daily journal entries to document your experiences. Write a detailed journal entry of your activities for one day.



Zoezi N

Before Shamila and Joseph travel to Kenya they check various websites and agree on a few things that they would like to do. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.

Shamila: Nimefurahi sana tutaweza kusafiri kwenda nchini Kenya. Nimekuwa nikitazamia safari hii sana kwa muda mrefu. Na wewe je?

Joseph: Mimi pia nina matarajio makubwa sana. Singependa kurudi Marekani kabla ya kupata nafasi ya kwenda kwenye *Safari*. Je, ungependa kuwa kwenye safari hiyo kwa muda gani?

Shamila: Itategemea hela ambazo tunazo. Mimi nilikuwa nimeweka akiba ya dola elfu moja na mia tano. Je wewe una hela ngapi?

Joseph: Mimi nimeweka hifadhi ya dola elfu mbili na mia tano. Kwa hivyo jumla tuna dola elfu nne na mia tano. Funke alisema ana dola elfu moja na mia tano na pia angependa kujiunga nasi. Kwa hivyo jumla utatuma dola elfu tano na mia tano.

Shamila: Hicho ni kiasi kizuri cha hela. Ninaangalia tovuti ya Bon Fire ambayo ni Kampuni maarufu kwa watalii wanaotaka kwenda Mbuga ya wanyama ya Maasai Mara. Tunaweza kuangalia bei ambazo wanazo ili tuchague moja kulingana na hela ambazo tuko nazo.

Joseph: Ninakubaliana na wewe. Ninaona kuna safari ya siku kumi na moja kwa gharama ya dola elfu nne mia tatu na tisini.

Shamila: Pia ninaona kuna safari nyingine ya siku kumi na mbili ambayo iko Kenya na Tanzania. Safari hii ni dola elfu tano mia tano na kumi na nane. Sijui kuna tofauti gani kati ya safari hizi mbili.

Joseph: Ninaona kwamba, safari ya pili ni ya kuzuru nchi ya Tanzania. Na pia muda utakaotumika kwa safari hii unaongezeka kwa siku moja kwa sababu ni mwendo mrefu. Mbali na hayo ninaona vivutio na shughuli za kila siku kama vile kwenda kwenye mbuga ya Maasai Mara kuwaona wanyama wa porini na kupanda mlima Kenya. Kulingana na maelezo kwenye tovuti la Bon Fire, kwenye Mlima kenya kuna wanyama pori

kama vile fisi, tembo, mwari wa mkia mweupe, suni, bweha mweusi mwenye kifua cheusi, swala bukini, swala maji na mbogo. Wanyama wanaonekana mara chache ni chui na nguruwe pori. Pia kuna ndege zaidi ya aina mia moja na thelathini ambao wako kwenye mlima huu. . Kati ya hizi siku kumi na moja tutaweza kutembelea vivutio vingine vilivyo karibu na mbuga ya Maasai Mara. Je, ungependa kwenda kwa safari ya Kenya peke yake au pia ile ya nchi ya Tanzania?

Shamila: Kwa sasa ningependa kwenda kwa safari ya Kenya. Nitaenda kwa safari ya Tanzania wakati mwingine. Na wewe je?

Joseph: Mimi pia ninapendelea safari ya Kenya tu. Ni bei rahisi kidogo na pia kuna shughuli mbalimbali za kuvutia kwa ratiba ya kila siku.

Shamila: Nitampigia Funke simu nimfahamishe kuhusu majadiliano yetu na kupata uamuzi wake kisha tuanze kununua tiketi za safari yetu.

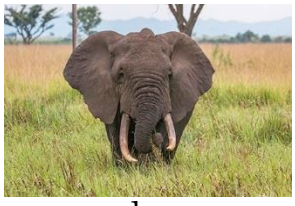
Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila, Joseph, na Funke wameweka jumla ya akiba ya pesa ngapi ambayo wangependa kuitumia kwa safari hii?
2. Shamila na wenzake wangependa kwenda kwenye safari kwa kutumia kampuni gani ya utalii?
3. Shamila na Joseph wangependakwenda kwa safari ya hela ngapi?
4. Kwa nini Joseph na Shamila wameichagua safari hii?
5. Je, kuna tofauti gani kati ya safari ya Kenya pekee na ile ya Kenya na Tanzania?
6. Mlima Kenya una ndege aina ngapi?

Zoezi O

Shamila and Joseph call John, the young Kenyan man they met at the music festival, in order to get his advice on good places they can visit in Kenya.


chui


ndovu


twiga


kiboko


mbweha


simba


nyumbu


punda milia


mamba


swala


kifaru


duma

Joseph: Vipi kaka John? Huyu ni Joseph kutoka Tanzania. Niko pamoja na Shamila. Tulikutana hapa Dar es Salaam mwezi uliopita katika Tamasha la Sauti ya Busara.

John: Salama sana. Mambo? Habari za siku nyingi? Nimefurahi sana kusikia kutoka kwenu.

Joseph: Mimi pia. Tungependa kukueleza kuwa tunapanga safari safiri ya kwenda Kenya wiki ijayo?

John: Karibu sana ninatazamia sana kuwaona.

Joseph: Asante. Tunatafuta vivutio ambavyo tunaweza kuvitembelea kwa wiki mbili ambazo tutakuwa nchini Kenya.

John: Ninafikiri mtapenda kwenda kwenye mbuga la wanyama la Maasai Mara ambapo mtaweza kuona uhamiaji wa nyumbu kutoka hifadhi ya wanyama ya Maasai Mara iliyoko upande wa Kenya na kuingia katika Mbuga ya Taifa ya Serengeti ambayo ipo nchi ya Tanzania.

Joseph: Safi kabisa. Shamila ana swali kwako. Kwa hivyo nitampa simu ili uzumgumze naye.

Shamila: John. Huyu ni Shamila. Nimefurahi sana kuwa tutaweza kukutana Kenya panapo majaliwa.

John: Mimi pia nimefurahi sana.

Shamila: Je, ni kweli kuwa Maasai Mara ndiyo hifadhi kubwa ya wanyama pori nchini Kenya?

John: Katika Afrika Mashariki hifadhi ya wanyama ya Maasai Mara ni maarufu sio tu kwa ukubwa bali kwa idadi ya wanyama wa kila aina wanaopatikana humo. . Niliona kwenye mtandao kuwa “Maasai Mara ni moja ya maeneo ya uhifadhi wa wanyama pori na vichaka muhimu zaidi barani Afrika na ni maarufu ulimwenguni kwa idadi yake bora ya simba, chui, duma na tembo wa Afrika. Pia ina uhamiaji mkubwa wa nyumbu ambao ni mojawapo ya miujiza ya asili ya Afrika na miujiza kumi bora y duniani.” Kulingana na maelezo haya ninaona Maasai Mara ni sehemu nzuri ya kutembelea.

Shamila: Huwa ninavutiwa na pembe za nyumbu na kifaru na jinsi wanavyotembea a pamoja kwa wingi .

Shamila: Naam! Kuna vivutio gani vingine nchini Kenya bali na Maasai Mara?

John: Nchini Kenya kuna vivutio vingi vya watalii kama vile Mlima Kenya, Bahari Hindi, Chemichemi ya maji moto ya Olkaria, Ziwa Bogoria, Ziwa Elementaita katika bonde la Ufa na vinginevyo.

Shamila: Kijiografia ninafahamu Mlima Kenya na Bahari Hindi lakini sijui Chemichemi ya Olkaria iko sehemu gani nchini Kenya?

John: Chemichemi ya Olkaria iko kwenye Mbuga la wanyama la Hells Gate ambalo lipo kusini mwa Ziwa Naivasha, kaskazini magharibi mwa mji wa Nairobi. Ni takribani kilomita mia moja na ishirini kutoka mji wa Nairobi. Mbuga hii inafahamika sana kutokana na mandhari yake na idadi kubwa ya ndege.

Shamila: Basi hapo ndipo mahali tunapaswa kwenda kwa kuwa ninapenda sana kukwea milima, kuona ndege na wanyama tofauti na kuongelea kwenye bahari. Pia ningependa kwenda kuona vivutio vilivyoko kwenye Bonde la Ufa kama ulivyosema.

John: Ninafikiri mkitembelea Kenya mtaweza kutimiza malengo yenu. Je, mnapanga kuwasili Kenya lini?

Shamila: Tutawasili Kenya tarehe moja, siku ya Jumatano. Tutasafiri kwa ndege ya Kenya Airways.

John: Sawa. Ninawatakia safari njema.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila, Joseph, na John walikutana wapi mara ya kwanza?
2. Shamila na Joseph watasafiri lini kwenda Kenya?
3. John alipendekeza Shamila na Joseph waende katika mbuga gani?
4. Ni Wanyama wa aina gani wanaopatikana katika hifadhi ya wanyama ya Maasai Mara?
5. Nyumbu huvuka kutoka sehemu gani hadi gani?
6. Kuna vivutio gani vingine nchini Kenya ambavyo Shamila na Joseph wataweza kutembelea?
7. Shamila na Joseph watawasili Kenya siku gani?
8. Shamila na Joseph watakaa Kenya kwa muda gani ?
9. Chemichemi ya Olkaria iko sehemu gani ya nchi ya Kenya na unafikiri watalii hutumia usafiri gani kutoka Nairobi hadi Naivasha?
10. Shamila na Joseph watatumia usafiri gani kwenda Kenya?

Zoezi P

Poll your classmates to find out what wild animals they have seen and where they saw them. Make sure to ask follow-up questions as needed. Be prepared to report back to the class on what you find out.



Zoezi Q

You are planning a trip to Kenya. Work with a partner to research tour companies that provide suitable tours. Weigh the relative advantages and disadvantages of the possible tour packages (including cost) and decide which package seems best for your group. Be prepared to share your choice with your classmates and to explain why your choice is the best option.



Zoezi R

Shamila and Joseph are on their flight to Kenya and are discussing their expectations about what they will do.

Joseph: Nimependezwa na jinsi wahudumu wa ndege ya kampuni ya Kenya Airways wanavyowahudumia wateja wao.

Shamila: Huduma zao ni nzuri sana. Kwanza jinsi ambavyo wamevalia sare yao ya kazi wanapendeza kwelikweli. Pia, wanazungumza Kiswahili sanifu, tofauti na lugha ya sheng niliyoelezwa na rafiki yangu kuwa inatumika sana na vijana mjini Nairobi na miji mingine nchini Kenya.

Joseph: Ninaona kuwa Kiswahili kinachotumika nao si tofauti na Kiswahili kinachozungumzwa nchini Tanzania.

Mhudumu: Mambo vipi?

Shamila: Salama. Safari mpaka kenya ni muda wa saa ngapi?

Mhudumu: Safari kutoka Tanzania hadi Kenya ni muda wa saa moja na dakika arobaini na tano.

Joseph: Ooh! Kumbe ni safari ya muda mfupi tu?

Mhudumu: Ndiyo. Hata ni dakika thelathini zimezasilia kabla ya kuwasili kwenye Uwanja wa Jomo Kenyatta. Ukiangalia chini baada ya dakika kumi hivi utaweza kuanza kuona majengo marefu ya ghorofa, na madhari ya Mbuga za Wanyama kwenye mji wa Nairobi.

Joseph: Kumbe kuna mbuga za wanyama katika jiji la Nairobi?

Mhudumu: Ndiyo. Ilikuwa hifadhi ya kwanza kuanzishwa nchini Kenya. Ilianzishwa mwaka wa 1946 na ina umaarufu mkubwa kwa kuwa iko karibu sana na mji mkubwa, ingawa jambo hili huleta mgogoro kati ya wanyama na wananchi. Wakati mwingine wanyama kama Simba hutoka porini na kutembea barabarani. Hali hii huhatarisha maisha ya watu. Kutoka katika jiji la Nairobi ni kilomita saba peke yake kufika kwenye hifadhi hii. Lakini unaweza kuchukua dakika kumi na tano, hadi saa moja kusafiri hizo kilomita saba. Muda wa kusafiri hutegemea kiwango cha msongamano wa magari, saa ya safari, na siku ya wiki. Kama mngependa kwenda ninawashauri muende wakati wa asubuhi ili muepuke msongamano mkubwa wa magari hapa mjini.

Joseph: Nilisoma kuwa pia kuna reli ya kisasa ya Kenya ya SGR ambayo inapitia kwenye mbuga hii. Je, tunaweza kuitumia?

Mhudumu: Ujenzi wa reli ulipata changamoto kubwa mwanzoni kwa kuwa mashirika ya kijamii yalipinga na kusema kuwa ujenzi huu kwenye mbuga la wanyama utavuruga maisha ya wanyama pori na mazingira. Hamwezi kutumia reli kwenda porini.

Joseph: Je, serikali na mashirika ya mazingira yanafanya nini kuboresha Mbuga hii.

Mhudumu: Serikali imeweka mikakati ifaayo ili kupunguza athari za tabia nchi ambayo inaleta ukame ili kuzuia uhamaji wa wanyama pori kutoka kwenye Mbuga hili hadi sehemu zingine. Pia serikali ya Kenya inaendelea kushirikiana na serikali ya kaunti na mashirika kama Africa Wildlife Foundation, Elephant Crisis Foundation na mengineyo pamoja na watafiti kutoka vyuo vikuu kama Chuo Kikuu cha Nairobi ili kubuni sera mwafaka na kutumia teknolojia za kisasa kama vile droni ili kurekodi video na picha ambazo zinaweza kutumiwa na watafiti kujua tabia na harakati za wanyama pori ili kupunguza migogoro katiya wanyama na binadamu.

Joseph: Asante sana kwa maelezo yako mema . Ninaona majengo marefu ya miundo ya kisasa. Kwani tushafika Nairobi?

Mhudumu: Ndiyo. Nilivyokueleza hapo awali ni safari fupi sana kwa ndege. Karibuni, nchini Kenya. Tumefurahia kuwa wahudumu wenu wa siku ya leo na tunatumaini mtachagua kampuni ya Kenya Airways katika safari zenu za baadaye.

Joseph: Asante sana. Tumefurahia safari yetu na huduma zenu.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila Na Joseph waliabiri ndege gani?
2. Kwa nini Joseph alipendezwa na wahudumu wa Kenya Airways?
3. Shamila na Joseph walisafiri kwa muda gani kutoka Dar es Salaam hadi Kenya?
4. Ndege ya kina Shamila ilitua kwa uwanja gani nchini Kenya?
5. Mbuga ya wanyama ya Nairobi ina changamoto gani?
6. Ni kilomita ngapi kutoka mji wa Nairobi hadi Mbuga la wanyama la Nairobi?
7. Kwa nini mhudumu aliwashauri Joseph na Shamila kuenda asubuhi iwapo walitaka kuenda kwenye Mbuga la Wanyamala Nairobi?
8. Serikali ya Kenya imeweka mikakati gani ili kuboresha Mbuga la Wanyama la Nairobi?
9. Mashirika gani yana shirikiana Pamoja kubuni sera mwafaka ambazo zitachangia kupunguza migogoro kati ya wananchi na Wanyama?
10. Kwa nini ujenzi wa reli ulipigwa na wananchi?

Zoezi S

How would you describe the relationship of people in your country to wild animals? Are steps taken to preserve the habitats of wild animals or is there a greater focus on protecting residents and their property? Discuss with a partner or the class as a whole.

Zoezi T

Read the **itinerary** of a Safari trip to Maasai Mara and Amboseli National Park and answer the questions that follow.

Siku tano za Safari kwenye mbuga ya Amboseli na Maasai Mara

Kenya Safari ni mojawapo ya kampuni za kuzuru kwenye Mbuga za Wanyama Pori bora zaidi nchini Kenya. *Kenya Safari* inakupeleka kwenye maeneo bora zaidi nchini Kenya na vile vile katika sehemu zingine za Afrika Mashariki. Tunapanga shughuli kadha zitakazomfanya mfurahie matembezi kwenye hifadhi ya taifa ya Masai Mara. Hii ni mojawapo ya sehemu tunayoipendekeza kwa watalii wote wanaofika nchini Kenya. Sehemu hii ni makao ya wanyamapori wengi, wakiwemo *bigfive*. Baadaye tutaenda kwenye Mbuga ya taifa ya Amboseli ambapo mtafurahia mandhari mazuri ya Mlima Kilimanjaro, ambao ni mlima mrefu zaidi barani Afrika. Mwishowe tutarejea mjini Nairobi na kutamatisha ratiba yetu.

Ratiba ya kina ya siku tano katika Maasai Mara na Amboseli

Siku ya 1:
Uhamisho kutoka Jiji la Nairobi kuelekea Mbuga ya taifa ya Amboseli

Safari yetu itaanzia kwenye hoteli yako huko Nairobi baada ya kupata kifungua kinywa. Ili kuhakikisha kila mtu ameelewa ratiba yetu ya siku tano tutawaeleza kwa ufupi kuhusu safari kisha tutaanza safari ya kuelekea Amboseli. Kutoka mji wa Nairobi ni takribani kilomita mia mbili na ishirini kwa gari. Ili wageni wetu wapate nafasi ya kuona mandhari tofauti ya nchi, tutatumia mji wa Namanga ulioko mpaka wa Kenya na Tanzania. Safari hii si fupi kwa hivyo tutawapatia chakula cha mchana baada ya kufika Mbuga ya taifa ya Amboseli. Tutapitia kwenye tambarare za savana ambapo tutaweza kuwaona wanyama kama vile nyati, tembo wa kiafrika, swala, simba, fisi, twiga, pundamilia, nyumbu, , na wanyama wengine wengi. Hatutakaa huko kwa muda mrefu ili kuwapatia wageni nafasi ya kula chakula cha jioni mapema na kupumzika kwa ajili ya shughuli nyingi za siku inayofuata.

Siku ya 2:
Siku nzima ya mchezo wa kuendesha gari katika Mbuga ya Amboseli

Kiamsha kinywa kitakuwa tayari saa kumi na mbili unusu na baada ya kula tutaenda kwenye bustani iliyoko kwenye hifadhi ya Amboseli. Kwa hivyo kila

mmoja wenu atahitaji kuamka mapema kwa ajili ya mchezo wa asubuhi. Mchezo wa asubuhi ni wa kuendesha gari. Itakuwa fursa nzuri kwako kutazama wanyama wengi kama kabla hawajatawanyika kwenye bustani. Kisha utarudi kwenye nyumba yako ya kulala na kupumzika hadi alasiri au kuchagua matembezi ya saa ya mchana katika bustani.

Siku ya 3:
Uhamisho kutoka Hifadhi ya Kitaifa ya Amboseli Hadi Hifadhi ya Kitaifa ya Masai Mara

Mtapata kifungua kinywa cha asubuhi kutoka kwa nyumba ya kulala wageni na Mtapata kifungua kinywa cha asubuhi kutoka kwa chumba cha kulala cha wageni na kila mmoja ataanza safari ya kwenda hifadhi ya taifa ya Maasai Mara. Kutoka hifadhi ya Amboseli hadi hifadhi ya taifa ya Maasai Mara ni umbali wa kilomita 517. Safari itachukua takriban saa tisa hadi kumi kwa gari. Kwenye safari hii tutapumzika katika mji wa Narok na kwa wale wanaopenda nyama watapata nafasi ya kula nyama ya ng'ombe na kuzungumza na Wamaasai ili kujua zaidi kuhusu utamaduni wao na shughuli zao za ufugaji wa mifugo. Tutatakiwa kufika katika hifadhi ya taifa ya Maasai Mara alasiri. Kwa ajili ya safari ndefu hututafanya lolote zaidi ya chako, kuburudika, kupumzika, kula chakula cha jioni na kulali kwenye AA Mara Lodge au sehemu nyingine.

Siku ya 4:
Gari la siku nzima katika hifadhi ya taifa ya Maasai Mara

Siku hii watu watahitaji kuamka mapema kwa ajili ya kifungua kinywa na kuelekea kwenye hifadhi ya Kitaifa ya Maasai Mara. Tofauti na hifadhi ya Amboseli, katika hifadhi ya Maasai Mara mtaweza kuwaona wanyama wengi na pia kwa urahisi wakati tutakapokuwa tukieendesha gari. Hifadhi hii ni kubwa zaidi na kuna wanyama wakali kama Simba na Chui kwa hivyo kila mtu atabaki kwenye gari kwa ajili ya usalama. Baadaye, hoteli maarafu ya Mara Serena Safari Lodge itaandaa chakula cha jioni msituni ili watu wale chakula cha jioni wakiyafurahia madhari. Hakuna kulipa ada zaidi kwa kuwa kila kitu kimegharamiwa. Hoteli hii ina walinzi wao wa kuhakikisha usalama bora wa kila mgeni.

Siku ya 5:
Kuendesha gari kutoka hifadhi ya taifa ya Maasai Mara kurudi Nairobi

Baada ya kifungua kinywa tutatoka kwenye hifadhi kwa kutumia en-route game drive. Ni mwendo wa saa tano hadi sita kutoka Maasai Mara kufika Nairobi. Tutasimama kwa saa moja katika mji wa Narok kwa ajili ya chakula cha mchana. Tutatarajiwa kufika Nairobi jioni ambapo wageni wataweza kuendelea na mipango yao ya kibinafsi.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Kwa nini Kenya Safari ni kampuni maarufu?
2. Kwa nini watalii hawatakaa kwenye mbuga ya Taifa ya Amboseli kwa muda mrefu?

3. Mchezo wa asubuhi wa kuendesha gari kwenye bustani ya Amboseli utawapatia watalii nafasi gani?
4. Kwenye mapumziko mjini Narok, watalii wataweza kufanya nini?
5. Kuna tofauti gani kati ya hifadhi ya Maasai Mara na Mbuga ya wanyama ya Amboseli?



Zoezi U

There is a delegation from East Africa visiting your school that wants to go on a tour of your town and of important sites in the region. Prepare an itinerary that includes specific times and places that you will visit.



Zoezi V

Exchange your itinerary from the previous activity with a partner and come up with 5 questions that the delegation might ask about the timing and the places that they will visit. Once you have the questions prepared, act out the conversations. As time allows, discuss which of your itineraries is better or how you might combine your ideas to create a better itinerary.



Zoezi W

Joseph and Shamila arrive at Jomo Kenyatta Airport and are picked up by Isaiah from the tour company, who takes them to their hotel.

Isaiah: Karibuni Kenya Shamila na Joseph.

Shamila: Asante sana. Je, hujambo?

Isaiah: Sijambo. Mimi ni dereva wenu kutoka Kampuni ya Bonfire. Nitawapeleka kwenye hoteli ya Olesereni ambako mtakaa usiku wa wa leo kabla ya safari yenu kuanza.

Shamila: Asante kwa kuja kutupokea. Kila mmoja wetu ana mizigo mingi.

Isaiah: Ninaona. Tafadhali acheni mizigo yenu papa hapa. Nitawabebea hadi garini. . Karibuni kwenye gari

Shamila: Sawa.
Mimi ninaitwa Shamila, huyu ni Josepna na huyu ni Shamila.

Isaiah: Mimi ni Isaiah. nimefurahi sana kuwafahamu. Nitakuwa nanyi kwa mahitaji yoote ya usafiri muda wote wa safari. Karibuni kwenye gari.

Shamila: Asante.
Je, hoteli ya Olesereni iko mbali na uwanja wa ndege?

Isaiah: Hapana. Hoteli ya Olesereni haiko mbali. Kutoka kwa uwanja wa ndege ni kilomita ishirini na tano na huchukua takribani dakika thelathini kama hakuna msongamano wa magari. Lakini sasa ni saa kumi na moja na robo saa ya watu wengi kutoka kazini kwa hivyo kuna msongamano

mkubwa wa magari. Itatuchukua angalau dakika hamsini na tano kufika hotelini.

Shamila: Sawa hamna neno. La msingi ni tufike hotelini kwa usalama. Mandhari ya Nairobi yanapendeza sana. Kuna majengo mengi sana, pia kuna watu wengi wanaotembea nje, masoko wazi yaliyo na bidhaa nyingi.

Isaiah: Bila shaka kuna sehemu nyingi sana za kuzuru mjini Nairobi na pia vitu vingi vya kujistarehesha. Je, mtakuwa hapa kwa muda gani?

Shamila: Tutaenda safari i kwa siku kumi na moja. Kisha baada ya kurudi tutakuwa na siku mbili tu za kupumzika na kuzuru mji wa Nairobi .

Isaiah: Siku mbili ni mwafaka kuzuri sehemu mbali mbali mjini. Ninapendekeza mtembelee makavazi ya Karen Blixen, Bead Factory na pia soko la wazi la Maasai. Pia kuna mikahawa ambayo nitawapendekezea ili muweze kupata vyakula halisi vya Kenya.

Shamila: Asante kwa maelezo yako mazuri.

Isaiah: Je, hii ni mara yenu ya kwanza kuitembelea nchi ya Kenya?

Shamila: Ndiyo. Hii ni mara yetu ya kwanza kuitembelea nchi ya Kenya. Tumetokea nchi ya Tanzania kwa masomo ya nje ya nchi kwa muda wa mwaka moja. Tunataka kwenda kwenye safari.

Isaiah: Karibuni sana Kenya. Mmekuja wakati mzuri wa safari. Ni kipindi cha uhamiaji wa nyumbu kwa hivyo mtaweza kushuhudia tukio hili. Pia mtaweza kuwaona wanyama wengi mbugani. Mko hapa kwa siku kumi na moja na mtakuwa a na vitu vingi vya kufanya kila siku.

Shamila: Ni vema kusikia kuwa huu ni wakati mzuri wa kufanya safari.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Shamila na Joseph, waliwasili katika uwanja wa ndege wa Jomo Kenyatta mwendo wa saa ngapi?
2. Ni nani aliwalaki Shamila na Joseph katika uwanja wa ndege wa Jomo Kenyatta?
3. Iliwachukua muda gani kutoka uwanja wa ndege wa Jomo Kenyatta hadi hoteli ya Ole Sereni? Kwa nini?
4. Baada ya siku kumi na moja za safari, Shamila na wenzake watasalia mjini Nairobi kwa siku ngapi?
5. Dereva alipendekeza Shamila na wenzake watembelee sehemu gani baada ya safari yao?
6. Kwa nini dereva alisema kuwa Shamila na wenzake walikuwa wamefika wakati mzuri wa kufanya safari?

Zoezi X

The visiting delegation from the previous activities has arrived and you are now picking them up at the airport. Roleplay meeting them in the terminal and discussing their upcoming stay as you guide them to the car.

Zoezi Y

Watch the video clip on Hifadhi ya Serengeti from Tanzania's Channel 10 and answer the questions that follow.



tinyurl.com/4twx3u5m

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Kwa nini mwili wa kiboko umejaa matope?
2. mwongoza safari anasema nini kuhusu fisi madoadoa?
3. Wanyama wa porini wanapata vyakula vya kwa kuwinda wanyama gani?
4. Watalii hufanya vitu gani katika sehemu ya picnic sight?
5. Kwa nini huhitaji kuchimba dawa ovyo ovyo ukiwa hifadhini?
6. Watalii hawa wametoka kwenye hoteli gani?
7. Kwa nini huhitaji kuwacha uchafu wowote hifadhini?
8. Nyani hupendelea kula matunda kutoka kwenye mti gani?
9. Mwimbaji anasema kuwa kuna aina ngapi za ndege katika hifadhi ya Serengeti?
10. Simba wapandao juu ya miti wanapatikana katika hifadhi gani?
11. Kwa nini inasemekana hifadhi ya Serengeti ina idadi kubwa sana ya simba? Hifadhi hii ina simba wangapi?
12. Andika aya moja kuelezea kwa kifupi maelezo ambayo mwongoza safari anatoa kuhusu simba.
13. Andika aya moja kuelezea kwa kifupi maelezo ambayomwongoza safari anatoa kuhusu nyumbu.
14. Kwa nini chui aliyejipumzisha mtini haonekani kwa urahisi?
15. Jamii ya paka wakubwa ina wanyama gani?
16. Andika aya moja kuelezea kwa kifupi maelezo ambayo mwongoza safari anatoa kuhusu chui.
17. Wanaongoza watalii wana sifa gani na mchango upi kwa utalii unaofanyika ndani ya nchi husika?



Zoezi Z

Prepare a detailed presentation about a trip to East Africa: when you will go, who you will travel with, how you will get there, places you will visit, hotels you will stay in, restaurants you will visit, how you will get from one location to another. You might also provide some details about health concerns, financial issues (*mpesa*), and the things you might need to pack.

Key vocabulary

Nouns

bahari ocean
bata mzinga turkey
bonde valley
changamoto challenges
chemichemi fountain
chui leopard
chui mwenye milia tiger
dubu bear
duma cheetah
eneo region
hali ya uchumi economy
jangwa desert
kasuku parrot
kifaru rhinoceros
kilele peak
kisiwa island
korongo stork
kulungu antelope
maandalizi preparation
maanthari/mandhari environs
makavazi museum
mauzo sales
mbu mosquito
mbwa dog
mbweha fox
miinukio altitude
msitu forest
mtandao internet
ndovu elephant
ng'ombe cow
ngoma za kisasa contemporary dances
ngoma za kitamaduni traditional dances
ngoma za kizazi kipya new generational music
nyangumi whale
nyani baboons
nyati buffalo
nyuki bee
nyumbu wildebeest
paa deer
paka cat
papa shark
pesa za kigeni foreign currency
pofu eland (antelope)
punda milia zebra
pwani coast
pweza squid
ratiba program
sigi dove
simba lion
sokwe gorilla
tai eagle
ufukwe beach
uhamiaji migration

utalii tourism
utalii wa ndani domestic tourism
utalii wa nje international tourism
vivutio attractions
volkano volcano
wizara ya utalii na Wanyama pori Ministry of Tourism and Wildlife

Verbs

-beba to carry
-chukua to pick up
-kwea to climb
-laki welcome/receive
-nyanyua to lift up
-papasa to pat
-peleka to take
-pokea to receive
-safirisha to transport
-shuka to go down
-stahimili to overcome
-tisha to scare
-tumia to use

Adjectives

bora better
chache few
hatari dangerous
kasi fast
kimya quite
maridadi beautiful
pendeza attractive
polepole slow
salama safe
wengi many

Phrases

gharama ya juu high cost
hewa safi clean air
hifadhi ya mazingira environmental conservation
maingiliano kati ya utalii na jamii relationship between the community and the tourism sector
manthari ya kupendeza beautiful environment
sketa ya utalii tourism sector
uchafuzi wa mazingira air pollution
usalama wa kutosha adequate security
vivutio vya watalii vichache few tourist attractions
vivutio vya watalii vingi many tourist attractions
wanyama wa kuogofya scary animals
wanyama wa kupenda attractive animals

Epilogue

Zoezi A

Joseph and Shamila spend their final night in a joint dinner with their host families and discuss their recent trip to Kenya. Read their conversation and answer the questions that follow.



Shamila: Shikamoo Mabwana na Mabibi na habari za jioni?

Juma na Farida: Marahaba na karibu sana!

Shamila: Asante. Mmekuwa wapokezi wazuri na wakarimu. Nimefurahi kukaa nanyi sana tangu tulipofika Tanzania takriban mwaka mmoja uliopita.

Joseph: Sikujiskia kuwa mgeni kwa ajili ya ukarimu wa Bwana musa na Bi. Fatuma. Siamini kuwa mwaka mmoja umeisha na nitawakosa sana kwa kuwa nyinyi ni familia yangu. Ninatumani nitarudi tena. Mnakaribishwa Marekani sana.

Bwana Musa: Karibu kwetu tena. Tutafurahi kukupokea utakapotembelea Tanzania tena. Unazo nambari zetu za simu kwa hivyo tujulishe wakati utakapotaka kututembelea. Bila shaka tutafanya maandalizi yote pamoja na kuja kukuchukua kwenye uwanja wa ndege wa Kimataifa wa Julius Nyerere. Bi. Fatuma, una jambo lolote la kuongeza?

Bi. Fatuma: Langu ni kusema tutakukosa sana. Umekuwa kijana mwenye nidhamu na tumefurahia kukaa na wewe. Tungependa kujua safari yenu imekuwaje ya kwenda Zanzibar na nchini Kenya. Joseph alituelezea kidogo lakini itakuwa vizuri kusikia ripoti ya Shamila.

Bwana Musa: Kabla ya Shamila, ktueleza kuhusu safari yao ya Zanzibar, nina maswali machache kwa Joseph.

Joseph: Sawa, uliza Baba!

Bwana Musa: Je, una maoni gani kuhusu utamaduni wa Kenya?Mlitembelea makavazi yoyote nchini Kenya?

Joseph: Sikujifunza sana a kuhusu utamaduni wa nchi ya Kenya kwa sababu katika katika safari yetu tulitembelea Makavazi madogo ya Karen Blixen tu.,Hatukwenda kwa Makavazi ya Kitaifa ya Nairobi. Lakini, ninadhani tukipata nafasi ya kuhudhuria siku ya utamaduni katika ukumbi wa Bomas jijini Nairobi wakati mwingine tutaweza kujua zaidi kuhusu utamaduni wa makabila tofauti ya Kenya.

Bwana Musa: Shamila, sasa unaweza kutueleza kuhusu safari yenu.

Shamila: Safari ilikuwa nzuri sana. Tuliweza kuhudhuria tamasha ya Sauti za Busara. Huko tulitazama maonyesho ya kuburudisha na kutembelea mbuga za wanyama na sehemu zingine tofauti nchini Kenya

Bwana Juma: Nilisikia kuwa mliweza kuenda kwenye Mbuga ya Wanyama ya Amboseli na ya Masaai Mara. Ni mbuga gani ungependekeza tutembeleei iwapo tutapata pesa na nafasi.

Shamila: Mbuga ya wanyama ya Maasai Mara ni bora zaidi kwa kuwa kuna wanyama wengi zaidi na ni rahisi kuwaona kuliko mbuga zingine.

Bwana Juma: Je, mlikuwa na shughuli za kutosha kufanya kwenye safari yenu?

Shamila: Tulikuwa na shughuli nyingi na siku zilikwenda upesi sana. Tulitamani tukae siku mbili zaidi lakini hatukuwa na pesa za kutosha kulipia vyumba na chakula.

Bi. Fatuma: Ninafikiri hii ilikuwa safari ndefu. Mbona hamkubaki huko Amboseli?

Shamila: Kweli, hii ilikuwa safari ndefu, ya kilomita zaidi ya mia tano barabarani. Tulitaka a kwenda Maasai Mara kwa kuwa ni maarufu sana Afrika na duniani kote na ulikuwa msimu wa kuhama kwa nyumbu kutoka Maasai Mara hadi Serengeti.

Bi Fatuma: Mlifanya uamuzi mzuri.

Bwana Juma: Kama mngepata nafasi nyingine ya kupanga safari hii, ni mambo yapi ambayo mngeyafanya tofauti?

Shamila: Tungetembelea makavazi ya Taifa ya Bomas, Nyaraka za Kitaifa za Kenya na Tanzania ili kujua zaidi kuhusu utamaduni wa nchi hizi na historia za utawala wao wakati wa koloni za Wajerumani na Waingereza.

Joseph: Pia, tungetembelea sehemu nyingi sana na kuhudhuria sherehe zaidi hasa za dini tofauti ili tujue kuhusu dini ya Kihindi na dini asilia za Kiafrika kabla ya Wamisheni kufika Afrika Mashariki.

Bwana Juma: Tunaomba tuondoke sasa. Tunatumaini tutaonana nanyi kwenye uwanja wa ndege siku ya kusafiri kwenu.

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Kwa nini Joseph na Shamila watazikosa familia zao pokezi?
2. Kwa nini Joseph na Shamila hawakujua zaidi kuhusu utamaduni wa nchi ya Kenya?
3. Bwana Musa aliwashauri Joseph na Shamila kufanya nini ili kuelewa zaidi kuhusu utamaduni wa Afrika Mashariki?
4. Mbona Shamila na Joseph walisafiri kwa muda mrefu kwenda hifadhi ya Maasai Mara kutoka Mbuga la Wanyama la Amboseli?
5. Iwapo watapata nafasi ya kupanga safari nyingine, Joseph na Shamila watafanya nini tofauti ili kuboresha safari yao?

Zoezi B

Joseph and Amina arrive to take Shamila to the airport. Read the dialogue of Shamila saying goodbye to her host family and answer the questions that follow.



Amina: Hodi huku, wenyeji wapo?

Bi Farida: Karibu ndani, tupo!

Amina: Shikamoo mama.

Bi Farida: Marahaba! Habari za leo?

Amina: Salama. Tumekuja kumchukua Shamila.

Bi Farida: Shamila! Njoo akina Joseph wameshafika.

Shamila: Hamjambo Amina na Joseph?

Joseph: Hatujambo! Habari za leo?

Shamila: Mimi niko salama.

Joseph: Uko tayari?

Shamila: Nilikuwa ninamalizia kuzipaki nguo zangu kwenye begi ili tuondoke. Niee dakika kumi peke yakeili nimalize kuzipanga nguo zangu.

Joseph: Sawa harakisha kwa kuwa ni muda mdogo umebaki na Amina ameniambia kuwa wakati wa jioni huwa kuna msongamano wa magari kwenye barabara ya kuingia kwenye uwanja wa ndege wa kimataifa wa Julius Nyerere.

Bi Farida: Joseph, umefurahia kukaa hapa Dar es Salaam na maisha ya nchi ya Tanzania na Afrika Mashariki kwa jumla?

Joseph: Ndiyo, nimefurahia chakula kizuri cha kitamaduni hasa wali wa nazi, samaki wa kupaka, biriani ya kuku, sambusa, pamoja na kinywaji cha ukwaju. Pia watanzania ni watu wenye ukarimu mwingi, wenye utu na roho nzuri. Mimi na Shamila tulifurahia nafasi ya kuhudhuria sherehe mbambali na kujua zaidi kuhusu utamaduni na sanaa za nchi hii . Mandhari pia yanapendeza hasa saa za jioni kwa ajili ya upepo wa bahari Hindi. Wiki mbili za mwisho ingawa tulitumia pesa nyingi zilikuwa muhimu sana kwetu kwa kuwa tuliona vivutio vingi na tuliweza kwenda kwenye burudani mjini.

Bi Farida: Nimefurahi kufahamu kuwa mmependezwa na nchi yetu. Ninaona Shamila ako tayari na begi zake.

Shamila: Ndiyo mama! Sasa ninaona saa ya kuanza safari yetu kuelekea uwanja wa ndege na kurudi Marekani imefika. Lakini, kabla tuondoke tungependa kuwashukuru sana, wewe na Bwana Juma, pamoja na familia ya Bwana Musa na Bi. Fatuma. Mmetupokea vizuri sana na kutusaidia kwa mambo mengi kwa mwaka mmoja tuliokaa na nyinyi.

Juma: Karibuni sana. Mmekaribishwa nyumbani kwetu wakati wowote. Tutafurahi kuwapokea tena pamoja na familia zenu.

Shamila: Ningependa kuwapatia zawadi ndogo kama ishara ya shukrani zangu. Hii ni zawadi yako Bi. Farida na familia yenu. Joseph alishawapatia Bi. Fatuma na Bwana Musa zawadi yao. Tuliona ni vema tuwapatie zawadi kuonyesha shukrani zetu za dhati.

Joseph: Ninajua tunaweza kukosa nafasi nyingine kuzungumza tunapoenda kwenye uwanja wa ndege kwa ajili ya muda. Kwa hivyo kwa niaba ya wanafunzi wote wa Kiswahili, tunatoa shukrani zetu za dhati kwa ukarimu, upendo, na msaada wenu tangu tulipofika kwenye boma lenu. Kusema kweli, tumekuwa tukijihisi nyumbani.

Amina: Karibuni hapa Tanzania na nyumbani kwetu wakati wowote. Tunawashukuru pia kwa kuwa wanafunzi wazuri na kutupatia zawadi.

Shamila: Sasa tunaweza kuondoka, Amina.

Joseph: Hebu nikusaidie kuweka begi zenu kwenye gari.

Shamila: Kwaheri Bi. Farida. Nitawasiliana na nyinyi nitakapofika mji wa Lawrence.

Bi Farida: Zisalimie familia zenu na muwaambie tumewakaribisha hapa Tanzania. Ninatumaini watatutembelea likizo moja hivi karibuni.

Joseph: Tutuwasalimia. Kwaheri!

Bi Farida na Juma: Kwaheri ya kuonana!

Jibu maswali yafuatayo.

1. Kwa nini Shamila anahitaji kuharakisha kupanga nguo zake?
2. Amina na Shamila walifanya nini wakimsuburi Shamila kujitayarisha?
3. Ni mambo gani aliyoyafurahia Joseph kwa mwaka mmoja alioishi Afrika Mashariki?
4. Kwa nini Joseph na Shamila walizipatia familia zao pokezi zawadi?
5. Kwa nini Joseph alisema alikuwa anajihisi kuwa nyumbani tangu afike kwenye boma la Bwana Musa na Bi. Fatuma?

Sources

7.1 Usafiri

- “Masai men walking” by Toppazz is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Twee_Masai_mannen_bewapend_met_pijlen_en_bogen,_-14_december_2010_a.jpg
- “Skater Nairobi Park” by Alejandro Caceres is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 8/14/23/ https://flickr.com/photos/ac2099/15410227273
- “Bicycle delivery guy in Diani Kenya” by Emmaculate Jacobine is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:A_bicyle_delivery_guy_in_diani_kenya.jpg
- “Kilifi county” by Kabukasteven is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kilifi_county.jpg
- “Tuk-tuk in Nairobi” by Daryona is licensed under a GNU Free Documentation License. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Tuk-tuk_in_Nairobi.JPG
- “BHP Subaru Nairobi » by joeyprek is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/26/2023. https://flickr.com/photos/joepyrek/8298466347
- “Taxi” by Brenda Wawire is licensed under CC BY NC.
- “Mercedes Benz Irizar coach” by Bob Adams is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mercedes_Benz_Irizar_coach_(15359623380).jpg
- “Matatu matwana culture Kenya” by Mikenautomobile is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/0/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:MATATU_MATWANA_CULTURE_KENYA_06.jpg
- “Buses in Kenya 15“ by Smart villager and Matwana culture Kenya is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Buses_in_kenya_15.jpg
- “Kenya Airways“ by Nevit Dilmen is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kenya_Airways_9984_Nevit.jpg
- “RVR 9408 Nairobi [train] » by Fredrick Onyango is licensed under CC BY. Las accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:RVR_9409_Nairobi.jpg
- “Traffic jam in Nairobi “by Musya Jackson is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Traffic_Jam_in_Nairobi.jpg
- "Mombasa ferry" by Daryona is licensed under a GNU Free Documentation License. Las accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mombasa_ferry.JPG
- “Passengers alighting from the Madaraka Express…” by Kemuntobear is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Passengers_Alighting_from_the_Madaraka_Express_Train_,Standard_Gauge_Railway_SGR_KENYA_when_it_was_first_Launch.jpg#/media/File:Passengers_Alighting_from_the_Madaraka_Express_Train_,Standard_Gauge_Railway_SGR_KENYA_when_it_was_first_Launch.jpg
- “President Trump and the First Lady Welcome the President of the Republic of Kenya and Mrs. Kenyatta to the White House” is in the public domain. Last accessed 9/6/23. https://www.flickr.com/photos/whitehouse45/30455961938
- Content of Zoezi I adapted from BBC articles “Kwa Picha: Mkutano wa Uhuru Kenyatta na Donald Trump White House Marekani” (https://www.bbc.com/swahili/habari-45327398) and “Rais Trump na Kenyatta wajadili ugaidi na biashara mkutano wao White House, Marekani” (https://www.bbc.com/swahili/habari-45326727).
- Screen capture from *Inside the World of Matwana Matatu Culture* from CNN. All rights reserved to CNN. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=c8sStE9p4QM.
- Screen capture from Faces of Africa – Matatu: My Life, My Art” from CGTN Africa. All rights reserved to CGTN Africa. Last accessed 10/9/2023. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=8bOK3dS56Ik.
- “Bus Ticket” by Easy Coach adapted from https://youthvillage.co.ke/wp-content/uploads/PRINT.jpg. All rights reserved to Easy Coach.

- Zoezi R content adapted from “Je wajua athari za kuchelewa kukamilika kwa reli ya SGR Tanzania kiuchumi?” (https://www.bbc.com/swahili/habari-60052864) and “Kuhusu SGR” (https://www.trc.co.tz/pages/about-sgr)
- Screen capture from “Zanzibar Celebrates 20 Years of Sauti za Busara”. All rights reserved to Sauti za Busara Official. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=s2OkhNMzBRs

7.2 Starehe na Burudani

- “Left turn ahead only” by the government of Mauritius is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mauritius_Road_Signs_-_Mandatory_Sign_-_Left_turn_ahead_only.svg
- “Ahead only” by the government of Mauritius is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mauritius_Road_Signs_-_Mandatory_Sign_-_Ahead_Only.svg
- “Right turn ahead only” by the government of Mauritius is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mauritius_Road_Signs_-_Mandatory_Sign_-_Right_turn_ahead_only.svg
- “Map-Africa-Regions” by Nick Roux and Peter Fitzgerald is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Map-Africa-Regions.png
- “Simple compass rose” by Brosen is licensed under a GNU Free Documentation License. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Simple_compass_rose.svg
- Zoezi U text adapted from “Hawa sio wa kuwakosa katika Tamasha la Sauti za Busara 2022” by Paul Owere. Published January 28, 2022 in *Mwananchi*. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://www.mwananchi.co.tz/mw/michezo/burudani/hawa-sio-wa-kuwakosa-katika-tamasha-la-sauti-za-busara-2022-3697544
- Screen capture from “Tazama: Msanii wa Tanzania Dipper Rato anavyopania kukuza mziki wa Rege” from BBC News Swahili. All rights reserved to BBC News. Last accessed 10/18.2023. https://www.bbc.com/swahili/articles/cgxg8y4055go

7.3 Safari katika vivutio vya Utalii

- “Mount Kenya” by Radu Vatcu is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Mount_Kenya_2010.jpg.
- “Takaungu beach, Kenya” by Spurk1 is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Takaungu_beach,_Kenya.jpg.
- “Nairobi skyline” by Jorge Láscar is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://www.flickr.com/photos/jlascar/4540193281/.
- “Sansibar Holzboot” by Ikiwaner is licensed under a GNU Free Documentation License. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Sansibar_Holzboot.jpg.
- “Chalbi Desert” by Filberto Strazzari is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://www.flickr.com/photos/filiberto74/6318810646/.
- “Palace Museum” by Harvey Barrison is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Zanzibar_2012_06_06_4225_(7592222730).jpg.
- “Tsavo Gate” by Mariusz is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:TsavoGate67.jpg.
- “MamaLai” by ZeeKay is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:MamaLai.jpg.
- Zoezi G itinerary is based upon information provided in tour descriptions from Kilimanjaro on Foot (kilimanjaroonfoot.com) with some modifications and translated from the original English.
- “Kilimanjaro” by Stig Nygaard is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/18/2023.
- “Climbing toward the Lava Tower site, Kilimanjaro” by Masa Sakano is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023.

https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Climbing_toward_the_Lava_Tower_site,_Kilimanjaro,_-25_Aug._2009_a.jpg
- “Kilimanjaro” by Mário Simoes is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://www.flickr.com/photos/56785346@N00/27307131894
- “African leopard” by Derek Keats is licensed under CC BY 2.0. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:African_leopard,_Panthera_pardus_pardus,_near_Lake_Panic,_Kruger_National_Park,_South_Africa_(19448654130).jpg
- “African elephant” by Charles J. Sharp is licensed under CC BY SA 4.0. Last accessed 10/18/2023.
- https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:African_elephant_(Loxodonta_africana)_2.jpg
- “Giraffe at Nairobi National Park, Kenya” by Trump White House Archived is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://www.flickr.com/photos/148748355@N05/43309132930/.
- “Portrait Hippopotamus in the water” by Muhammad Mahdi Karim is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Portrait_Hippopotamus_in_the_water.jpg.
- “Masai Mara National Reserve” [Hyena] by Ninara is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/18/23. https://www.flickr.com/photos/ninara/52493449934/
- “Lion at rest” by Richard Probst is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/18/23. https://www.flickr.com/photos/shotinaframe/52941076093.
- “Blue Wildebeest, Ngorongoro” by Muhammad Mahdi Karim is licensed under a GNU Free Documentation License. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Blue_Wildebeest,_Ngorongoro.jpg.
- “Grevy’s zebra” by Snake3yes is licensed under CC BY. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://www.flickr.com/photos/snake3yes/229889098.
- “Crocodile” by eks-i zîbâ is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://flickr.com/photos/eksiziba/9281191896.
- “Impalas at Nairobi National Park, Kenya” by Trump White House Archived is in the public domain. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://www.flickr.com/photos/148748355@N05/45073825842/.
- “White rhino and young” by Hein Waschefort is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:White_rhino_and_young.jpg.
- “Sitting Cheetah” by Benh Lieu Song is licensed under CC BY SA. Last accessed 10/18/2023. https://www.flickr.com/photos/blieusong/7233912052/.
- Screen capture from “U Talii wa Ndani - Hifadhi ya Serengeti 22.04.2016” by Channel ten. All rights reserved to Channel ten. Last accessed 10/19/2023. https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=TLwMjFO0Omg